

TIME FOR

# English

By A Group Of Supervisors

المعاصر في  
اللغة الإنجليزية  
للمعاصرين المبتدئين  
الفصل الدراسي الأول



معك  
Ma3ak App

التطبيق التفاعلي  
للتعلم عن بُعد

EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

6<sup>th</sup>  
Primary  
2022

FIRST TERM



# CONTENTS

## PART ONE

• Get Ready ! .....	15
• Writing Skill .....	19
• Do You Remember ? .....	21
• Classroom Language .....	24
• Unit ① Places We Go .....	28
• Unit ② In the Restaurant .....	75
• Unit ③ Daily Activities .....	124
• Unit ④ Visiting a Film Studio .....	175
• Unit ⑤ In Town .....	222
• Review .....	267

## PART TWO

• El Moasser student's Follow up .....	285
--	-----



# GET READY!



## 1. Parts of speech:

١. أجزاء الكلام :

### 1 noun الاسم



goat عنزة



bag حقيبة



boy ولد



Salma سلمى

### 2 verb الفعل



eat يأكل



read يقرأ



play يلعب



run يجرى

### 3 adjective الصفة



small ant  
نملة صغيرة



big camel  
جمل كبير

### 4 preposition حرف جر



in the morning  
في الصباح

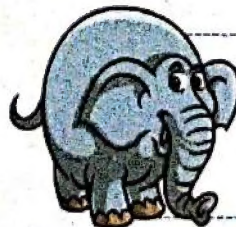


on the table  
على المنضدة

### 5 pronoun ضمير



Adam is tall. He isn't short.  
آدم طويل. هو ليس قصير.



The elephant is big. It isn't small.  
الفيل كبير. هو ليس صغير.





## 2. Question Words

كلمات الإستفهام

Question words	كلمات الإستفهام	Usage	الاستخدام
1. Who ....?	من ؟.....	1. للسؤال عن الفاعل العاقل	
2. Where ....?	أين ؟.....	2. للسؤال عن المكان	
3. When ....?	متى ؟.....	3. للسؤال عن الزمان	
4. Whose ....?	ملك من ؟.....	4. للسؤال عن الملكية	
5. What ....?	ما / ماذا ؟.....	5. للسؤال عن الفاعل غير العاقل	
6. How ....?	كيف ؟.....	6. للسؤال عن الوسيلة / الكيفية / الحالة	
7. Which ....?	أيهما ؟.....	7. للاختيار بين شيئين	
8. Why ....?	لماذا ؟.....	8. للسؤال عن السبب	

Who

1



Who is he ?

Where

2



Where is he ?

When

3



When does he watch videos ?

Whose

4



Whose jacket is this ?

What

5



What is he doing ?

How

6



How does he go to school ?

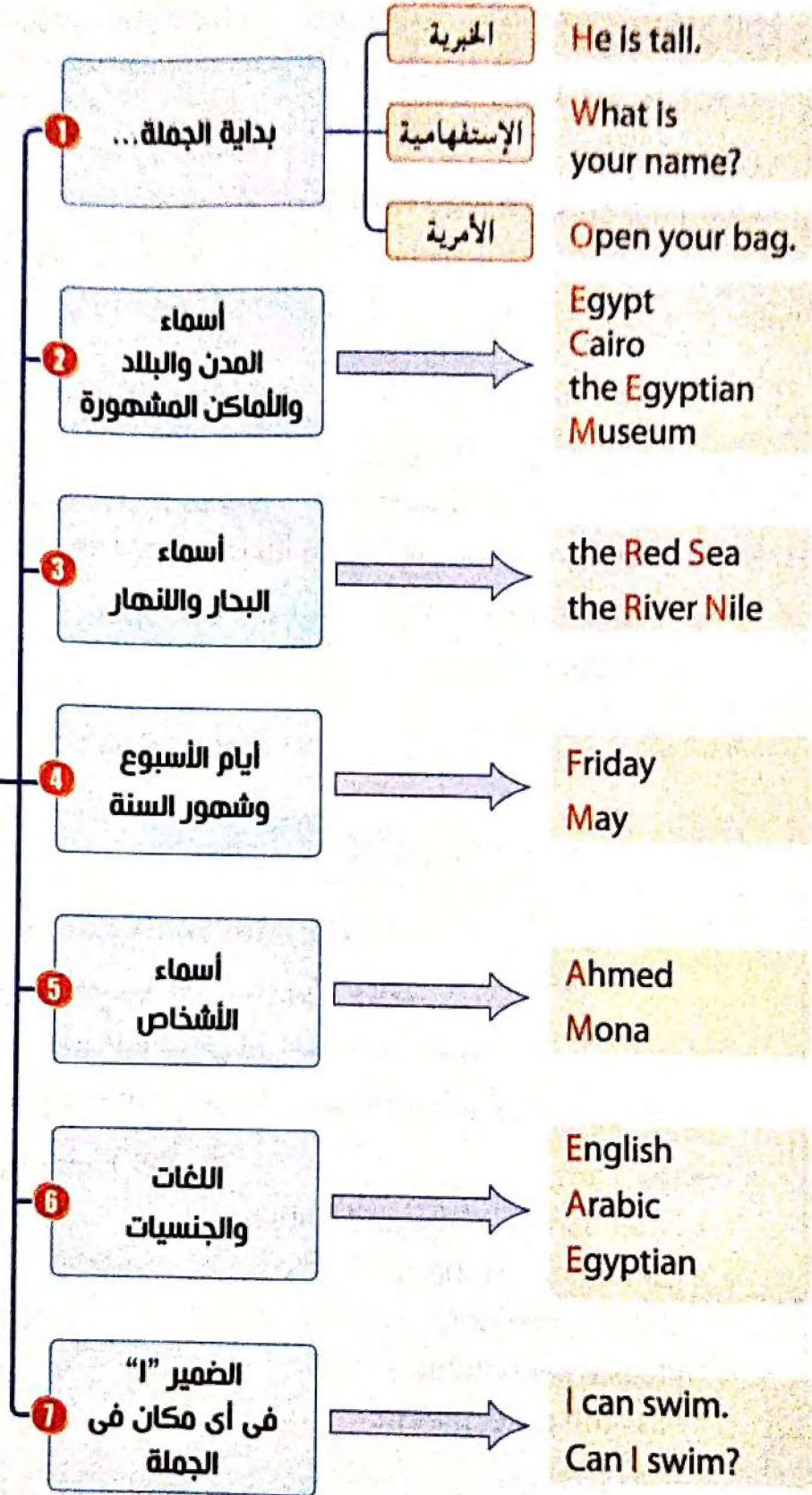


### 3. Punctuation Marks

٣. علامات الترقيم

#### الحروف الكبيرة : Capital Letters

تستخدم مع





### Full stop

توضع النقطة في نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

- \* I am Kareem.
- \* Open the door, please.

### Question mark

توضع علامة الاستفهام في نهاية السؤال.  
How are you ?



### Exclamation mark

تستخدم علامة التعجب في حالة الترحيب أو التعجب.

Wow !  
Don't run !  
Hello !  
Oh !  
Help !  
Hi !



### Apostrophe

١. تستخدم الفاصلة العليا (') في الاختصارات  
مثل (is = 's / are = 're / have = 've)

It's a puppet.

٢. تستخدم مع (s) الملكية.

That is Heba's car.



### Comma

١. تستخدم الفاصلة السفلية (,) بعد Yes أو No.

٢. تستخدم للفصل بين مجموعة من الأشياء من نوع واحد.

٣. توضع الفاصلة (,) بعد المخاطب في أول الجملة وقبل المخاطب في آخر الجملة.

٤. توضع قبل كلمة (please) في آخر الكلام وبعد (please) أول الكلام.

- \* Yes, I am.
- \* No, I am not.
- \* I met Samya, Heba and Nabila.
- \* Come here, Noha.
- \* Noha, come here.
- \* Please, keep quiet.
- \* Pass the cake, please.





## 4. Writing Skill

٤. مهارة الكتابة

الزمان  
مهارة الكتابة  
الظرف  
كراسة المعاصر  
التفاعلية

### 1. How to write a paragraph :

١. كيفية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

#### ⊙ القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريباً ١ سم) في السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
٢. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
٣. أن تضع (.) واضحة في نهاية كل جملة.
٤. أن تكتب كل علامات الترقيم.
٥. أن تبدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوع بدايات الجمل.
٦. أن تستخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
٧. أن تستخدم الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
٨. أن تجتهد في تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
٩. أن تستخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

### 2. How to write an email :

٢. كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني

Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه :

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل :

Subject : موضوع الرسالة :

Dear / Hi / Hello : اسم المرسل إليه

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you.

موضوع الرسالة

Yours,

اسم الراسل







# Do You Remember ?

Listen and repeat

استمع وردد

1

**Mona** : Hi! I'm Mona Samy. He's Kareem Ahmed. My puppet's name is Sokkara.

**Kareem** : We're making dinner. We're going to have spaghetti.

**Sokkara** : Yum ! My favourite !

منى : أهلاً ! أنا منى سامى. هو كريم أحمد. دميتى تدعى سكرة.  
كريم : نحن نعد وجبة العشاء. نحن سوف نتناول مكرونة اسباجتى.  
سكرة : لذيذة ! إنها المفضلة لى!



2

**Mona** : I'm fourteen.

**Kareem** : I'm fourteen, too.

**Sokkara** : Smells good.

منى : أنا عمرى ١٤ سنة.  
كريم : وأنا عمرى أيضاً ١٤ سنة.  
سكرة : تبدو رائحتها جيدة.



3

**Mona** : We like playing video games.

**Kareem** : I want to program computers.

Mona wants to be an engineer.

منى : نحن نحب ألعاب الفيديو.  
كريم : أريد أن أبرمج أجهزة الحاسب الآلى. تريد منى أن تكون مهندسة.



4

**Mona** : Monkeys and giraffes are my favourite animals.

**Kareem** : I like dolphins.

**Sokkara** : I like puppets.

منى : القرد والزراف حيواناتى المفضلة.  
كريم : أحب الدلافين.  
سكرة : أحب الدمى.





## Do You Remember ?

### A. Read and tick the best response.

1. I'm really thirsty.  
☐ Me, too. Let's get some juice.  
☐ Yes, but look at my skateboard.
2. Come on. Just a little.  
☐ Um, okay. I'll take this one.  
☐ Oh, all right. But not too much.
3. You're kidding!  
☐ It's time for breakfast.  
☐ No, it's true. I made it.
4. You play really well.  
☐ Thanks. I love playing music.  
☐ Oh, no! I missed it.
5. I don't have enough money.  
☐ That's okay. It's my treat.  
☐ I want to buy a gift for my dad.






### B. Find and circle the words. Then write.

s n o r k e l u w i n t e r v w u H i e s  
 h j u S t a t r g i r a f f e h b a p k o  
 a k r e m c h n d b d c d r S a t u r n u  
 r s l b f s i n g w t o i o z l i t s g p  
 k g v s l k n a r t i s t l k e Z u k d v



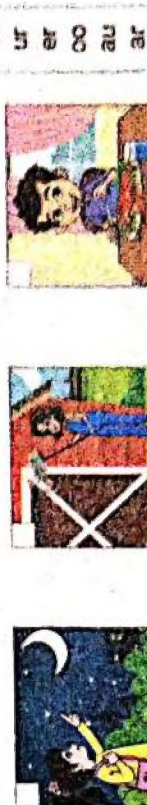
## Do You Remember ?

### C. Read the question. Write the answer.

1. Which one is faster ?  

2. What do they like to do ?  

3. Did he wash the pots and pans ?  

4. Why does he want to be a musician ?  

5. Is the shark bigger than the octopus ?  


### D. Fill in the blanks. Then number the pictures.

1. Unc Ahmed ate lobster in a s cer.
2. The g I with a p se p nted to the m n.
3. Salma chopp some w d and dust the b n.





# Classroom Language

## Vocabulary

paper  
test  
turn on  
exercise

ورقة ورقة  
امتحان امتحان  
تدوير تشغيل  
تمرين تمرين

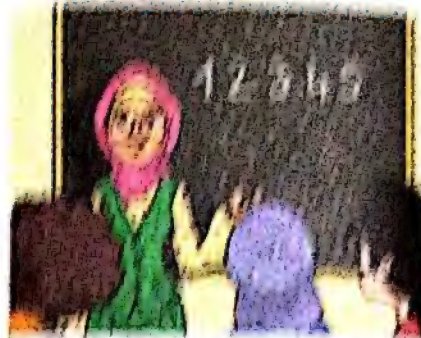
ورقة ورقة  
امتحان امتحان  
تدوير تشغيل  
تمرين تمرين

## Listen and repeat

1

Teacher : Please, number your papers from one to five. We're going to have a spelling test.

المعلمة : من فضلكم رتبوا الأوراق الخاصة بكم من واحد إلى خمسة. سنكون لدينا اختبار إملاء.



2

Teacher : Samy, will you turn on the CD player, please ? Go to track ten.

Samy : Okay.

المعلمة : من فضلك يا سامي، هل يمكنك أن تشغل مشغل الأقراص المضغوطة ؟ وانتقل إلى المقطوعة العاشرة رقم ١٠ على الأقراص.  
سامي : حسناً.



3

Heba : What's the homework for tomorrow ?

Teacher : Do the exercises on page three in your workbook.

هبة : ما هو الواجب المنزلي للغدا ؟  
المعلمة : قوموا بفعل التمرينات في الصفحة الثالثة في كتاب التمرينات.





4

Teacher : We're going on a field trip on Thursday. Please ask your parents to sign your permission form.

Kareem : Where are we going ?

Teacher : The Egyptian Museum.

المعلمة : سنذهب فى رحلة ميدانية (الغرض منها الدراسة) يوم الخميس. من فضلكم اطلبوا من أولياء أموركم التوقيع على استمارة الإذن بالذهاب.

كریم : إلى أين سنذهب ؟  
المعلمة : إلى المتحف المصرى.



5

Teacher : Mona, please stay after class and finish your homework.

Mona : Okay, Miss Nadia.

المعلمة : انتظرى يا منى، من فضلك بعد الحصة وانتهى من أداء واجبك المنزلى.

منى : حسناً، يا أستاذة ناديا.



6

Teacher : Have a good weekend, class! Don't forget, your projects are due on Sunday.

Kareem : Bye, Miss Nadia!

المعلمة : أتمنى لكم عطلة نهاية أسبوع ممتعة ولا تنسوا أن أباحتكم الدراسية مطلوبة يوم الأحد.

كریم : إلى اللقاء، يا أستاذة ناديا!





UNIT

1

# Places We Go

الأماكن التي نذهب إليها



- العلامة S8 تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.
- نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

### Listening/Speaking

- ask about museum hours, entrance fees & exhibits over the telephone
- السؤال عن ساعات عمل المتحف ورسوم الدخول والمعروضات بالمتحف عبر الهاتف.
- ask about past locations
- السؤال عن الأماكن التي كانت موجودة في الماضي
- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على المتكلمين في المحادثة

### Reading

- read a historical narrative
- قراءة نص سرد تاريخي

### Vocabulary

- public buildings & structures
- المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالمباني والمنشآت العامة

### Grammar

- prepositions of location
- تعلم حروف الجر الخاصة بتحديد المكان
- Yes / No questions with was
- تعلم السؤال بـ هل ..... ؟ مع فعل ويكون في الماضي

## لا لإتقان الوحدة :

• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.

• كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة والأبحاث بنهاية الكتاب.  
• Master your term داخل الكراسة التفاعلية.



# Conversation Time

BB page 1 WB page 1

## Key Vocabulary

daily	يومي / يوميًا	the Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري
foreigner	شخص أجنبي	Egyptians	مصريون
free	مجاني	adult	شخص كبير / بالغ
include	يشتمل / يتضمن	cost	تكلفة / تكلفة
Mummy rooms	حجرات المومياء	under	تحت / دون السن

## Notes

١. تبدأ المدن والجنسيات والأماكن المشهورة بحرف كبير (capital).  
- Mummy rooms  
- the Egyptian Museum
٢. حرف (g) في كلمة (foreigner) صامت (silent) لا ينطق.  
٣. يستخدم حرف الجر (under) بمعنى أسفل وعندما يأتي بعده رقم يكون بمعنى (أقل / دون سن).  
- Children under five are free.  
٤. يستخدم حرف الجر (for) بمعنى (لـ / لأجل).  
- for Egyptians للمصريين

## Active Vocabulary

places	أماكن	How many ...?	كم (للعدد) ...؟
receptionist	موظف استقبال	except	ماعدا / باستثناء
Fridays	أيام الجمعة	chimp	شمبانزي
L.E = pound	جنيه مصري	hours	ساعات (العمل)
children	أطفال	get out	يخرج
a.m.	صباحًا	open	مفتوح
p.m.	مساءً	welcome	مرحبًا
a nice day	يوم لطيف	film theatre = cinema	سينما
How much ...?	كم ثمن ...؟	holiday	إجازة

## Notes

١. يستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل أيام الأسبوع بمعنى «في»:  
- on Friday  
- on Sunday
٢. تستخدم كلمة (open) كفعل بمعنى يفتح وكصفة بمعنى مفتوح.  
- Open the door.  
- The museum is open from 7:00 to 10:00.
٣. هناك أسماء مفردة غير منتظمة عند جمعها لا يضاف لها (s).  
- child → children أطفال  
- man → men رجال



Conjugation of verbs				تصريف الأفعال	
Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	Past
help	يساعد	helped	ساعد	go	ذهب
open	يفتح	opened	فتح	get in	يدخل
include	يشمل	included	شمل	cost	يتكلف/تكلف
welcome	يرحب بـ	welcomed	رحب بـ	have / has	يملك/يملكون
thank	يشكر	thanked	شكر		had

## Exercise on Vocabulary

- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. theatre - library - help - museum

( )

(القاهرة - الرباطي ٢٠٢٠)

2. get up - open - have - hour

( )

3. between - blue - from - to

( )

4. Thursday - Monday - May - Tuesday

( )

5. Why - What - When - Sunday

( )

## ★ Telephoning a museum

الاتصال بالمتحف

- Characters شخصيات المحادثة

Kareem  
كريم



receptionist  
موظفة استقبال

- Topic موضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is a telephone call between Kareem, who is calling a museum and a woman who works at the museum.

محادثة اليوم هي مكالمة تليفونية بين كريم الذي يتصل بالمتحف والسيدة التي تعمل به.



**A** Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.



**Receptionist:** Good morning,  
the Egyptian Museum. How can I  
help you ?

موظفة الاستقبال : صباح الخير ،  
المتحف المصري ، كيف يمكنني أن أساعدك ؟

**Kareem :** Hi! What are your hours ?

كريم : أهلاً وسهلاً ما هي ساعات عملكم ؟

**Receptionist :** We're open from  
9:00 to 7:00.

موظفة الاستقبال : نحن نفتتح من الساعة  
التاسعة إلى الساعة السابعة.

**Kareem :** Are you open on Fridays ?

كريم : هل المتحف مفتوح في أيام الجمعة ؟

**Receptionist :** Yes. We're open daily.

موظفة الاستقبال : نعم ، المتحف مفتوح يومياً.

**Kareem :** How much does it cost  
to get in ?

كريم : كم ثمن تكلفة الدخول ؟

**Receptionist :** It's two pounds for  
Egyptians and twenty pounds for  
foreigners. Children under five  
are free.

موظفة الاستقبال : جنيهان للمصريين  
وعشرون جنيهًا للأجانب. والدخول للأطفال  
دون سن الخامسة بالمجان.

**Kareem :** Does that include the  
Mummy rooms ?

كريم : هل ذلك يشمل حجرات الموميا ؟

**Receptionist :** No, it doesn't.

موظفة الاستقبال : لا ، لا يشمل ذلك.

**Kareem :** Thanks for your help.

كريم : شكرًا لمساعدتك.

**Receptionist :** You're welcome.  
Have a nice day.

موظفة الاستقبال : على الراح والسعة.  
أتمنى لك يوماً رائعاً.



# Language Functions



Good morning, the  
Egyptian Museum.  
How can I help you?

1

• عند التحية نستخدم :

- Good morning صباح الخير

• لعرض المساعدة نستخدم :

- How can I help you ?

- كيف يمكنني أن أساعدك ؟

2

• للسؤال عن مواعيد العمل نستخدم :

- What are your hours ?

- ما هي ساعات عملكم ؟

- from ..... to .....

- من ..... إلى .....

Hi! What are  
your hours ?



We're open  
from 9:00 to 7:00.

3

• للسؤال عن أيام العمل لمكان ما نستخدم :

- Are you open on أيام الاسبوع ?

- هل تفتحون أيام الاسبوع ؟

• هناك بعض الأفعال تستخدم كصفة مثل  
: open

- We're open daily.

- المتحف مفتوح يوميًا.



Are you open  
on Fridays ?

Yes. We're  
open daily.



4

- للسؤال عن تكلفة الدخول إلى مكان ما نستخدم :
- How much does it cost to get in ?  
- كم تكلفة الدخول ؟  
• وللرد :  
- It's + المبلغ .  
- It's two pounds .  
• cost to + (inf. المصدر المفعول )  
• cost for + (noun المفعول ) } يتكلف  
- How much does it cost to get in ?  
- How much does it cost for children ?

How much does it cost to get in ?



It's two pounds for Egyptians and twenty pounds for foreigners. Children under five are free.

Does that include the Mummy rooms ?



No, it doesn't.

5

- للسؤال عن مشتملات العرض نستخدم :
- Does that include ... ?  
- هل ذلك يشمل ... ؟  
• وللرد :  
- Yes, it does. عند الموافقة  
- No, it doesn't. عند عدم الموافقة

6

- لشكر شخص على مساعدته نستخدم :
- Thanks for your help.  
- شكرًا على مساعدتكم.  
• وللرد :  
- You're welcome.  
- على الرحب والسعة (العفو) .  
• لوداع شخص ما متمنيًا له قضاء وقت لطيف :  
- Have a nice day.  
- أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا .

Thanks for your help.



You're welcome. Have a nice day.



## Exercise on Language Functions

● Listen and complete :

استمع إلى معلمك واكمل :

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Hala : Is it the (1) ..... Museum ?

Receptionist : Yes, it is.

Hala : When are you (2) ..... ?

Receptionist : We are open (3) .....

Hala : Thank you for your help.

Receptionist : You are (4) .....

## B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملائك للمحادثة السابقة.

## MASTER YOUR TERM

تمكن من منهجك  
بالطريقة المناسبة لك

 EL-MONASSER

في اللغة الانجليزية

ملحق المعاصر

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق





## General Exercises on Conversation Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معاملك واكمل :

Mona : Where are you going ?

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Ali : I am going to the Egyptian (1) .....

Mona : How much does it (2) ..... to get in ?

Ali : It's two pounds for (3) .....

Mona : Does that include the (4) ..... rooms ?

Ali : No, it doesn't.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. We are open ..... except on holidays.

(امتحان مجمع القاهرة - السيدة زينب ٢٠٢١)

a. week      b. day      c. month      d. daily

2. How ..... does it cost to get in ? (امتحان مجمع سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢١)

a. often      b. much      c. many      d. tall

3. .... you open on Fridays ? (امتحان مجمع بورسعيد ٢٠٢١)

a. Is      b. Are      c. Do      d. Was

4. When I visited the museum, I saw the ..... rooms.

a. Mummy      b. Class      c. Art      d. Music

5. The museum is ..... daily from 9:00 to 7:00.

a. free      b. open      c. good      d. bad

6. What ..... your hours ? - We are open from 9:00 to 7:00.

a. do      b. is      c. are      d. have

(امتحان مجمع المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢١)

7. No, it ..... include the Mummy rooms.

(امتحان مجمع البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢١)

a. don't      b. is      c. does      d. doesn't

8. It's only two ..... for Egyptians.

a. Fridays      b. children      c. museums      d. pounds

(امتحان مجمع الغربية - طنطا ٢٠٢١)



### 3 Read the passage and answer the questions :

اقرأ الفقرة وأجب على الأسئلة :

The Egyptian Museum is open on Fridays. It costs two pounds for a four-year-old child to get in. Kareem who is four wants to go to the museum on Tuesday. There is a free tour to the Mummy rooms. The woman who works at the museum says that they're open daily from 8:00 am to 8:00 pm. If Kareem's mother and father go to the museum, they will pay ten pounds to get in.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Kareem's father and mother will pay ..... pounds to get in the museum.  
a. ten                      b. five                      c. twenty                      d. two
2. The Egyptian Museum is open .....  
a. weekly                      b. monthly                      c. yearly                      d. daily

#### B. Answer the following questions :

3. How much does it cost for Kareem to get in the museum ?  
.....

4. What are the hours of the Egyptian Museum ?  
.....

### 4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences : اكتب فقرة انشائية من سبع جمل :

"The Egyptian Museum"



جواب عنه في نهاية الكتاب



### 5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

اعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. cost - get in - **How much** - does - to - It ?

2. open - are - on - **We** - Sundays.

### 6 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. what are your hours

2. children under five are free



### Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

أهم الجمل التي وردت في درس الـ (CONVERSATION TIME)

1. How can I help you ?
2. What are your hours ?
3. How much does it cost to get in ?
4. Children under five are free.
5. Does that include the Mummy rooms ?

### Dictation

ثلاثة طرق لمعالجة اتقان المفردات اللغوية

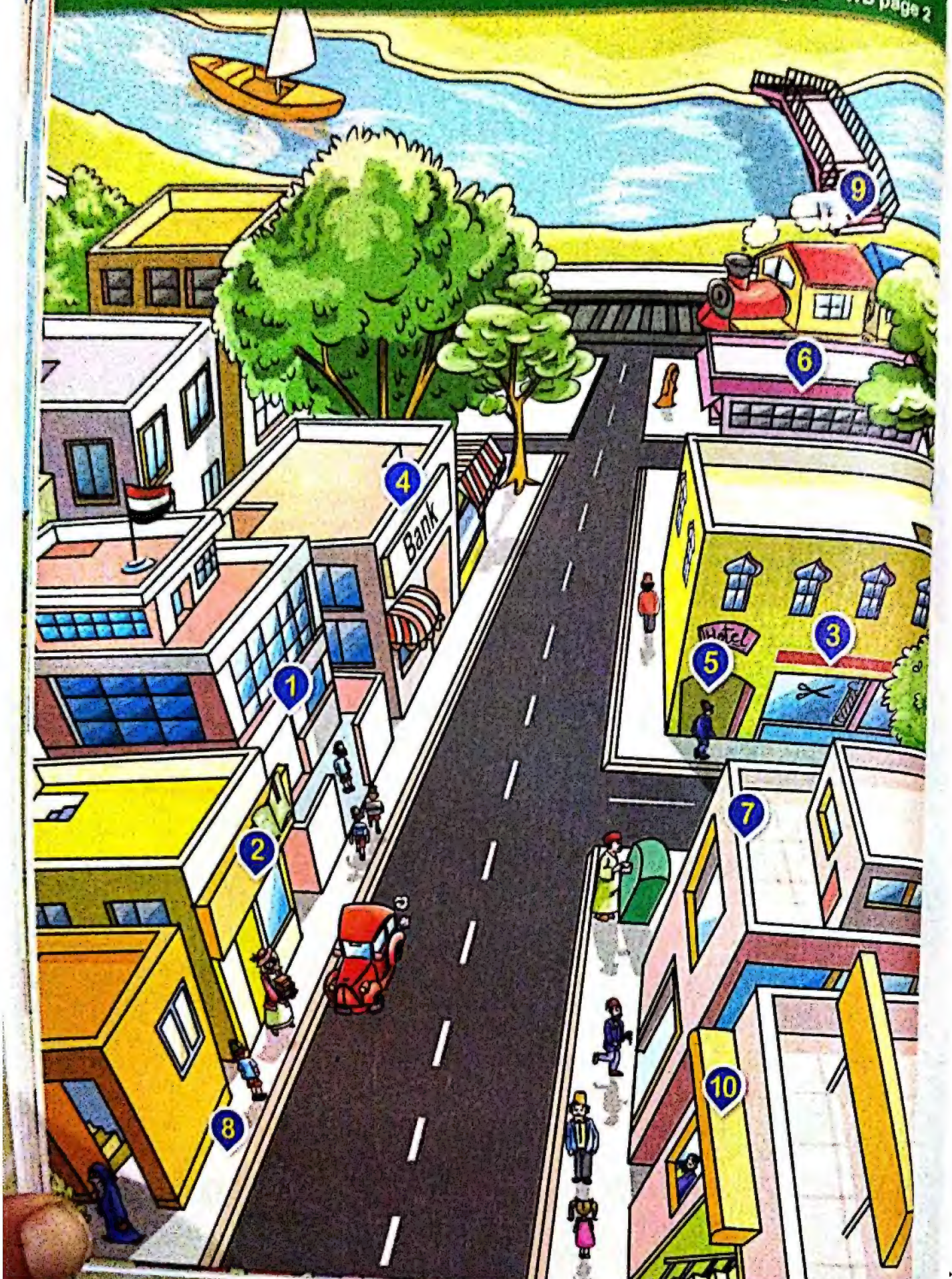
- ◀ جزء قياس مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.
- ◀ Mo kids لعبة تقيس مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.
- ◀ Word Bank (اصنع كراسة مفرداتك اللغوية بنفسك).





# Word Time

SB page 2 WB page 2





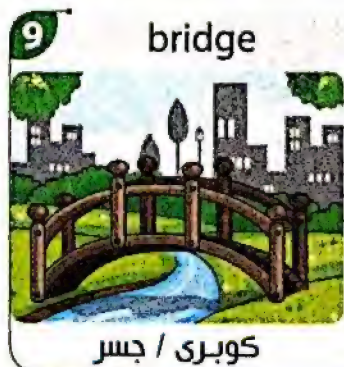
# A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد

## Key Vocabulary

## Public buildings & Structures

الأبنية والمنشآت (الأماكن العامة)





## Vocabulary

need

يحتاج

daughter

ابنة

haircut

قصّة شعر

heavy

ثقال

show

عرض ترفيهي (مسرحي / سينمائي)

borrow

يستعير

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. Be careful.

١. كن حذرا. (تستخدم للتذكير)

2. No problem.

٢. لا مشكلة.

3. Sure.

٣. بالتأكيد.

## Places we go أماكن نذهب إليها

ex. I go to the (المكان) to (السبب للذهاب).

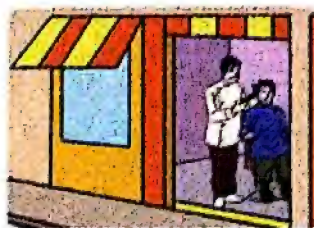
school



to learn

يتعلم

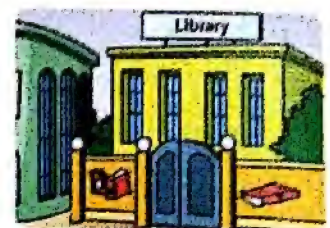
barber's shop



to get a haircut

يحصل على قصة شعر

library



to read / borrow books

يقرأ / يستعير كتب

train station



to take the train

يستقل القطار

theatre



to see the show

يشاهد العرض المسرحي

pavement



to walk on

يمشي (على الرصيف)



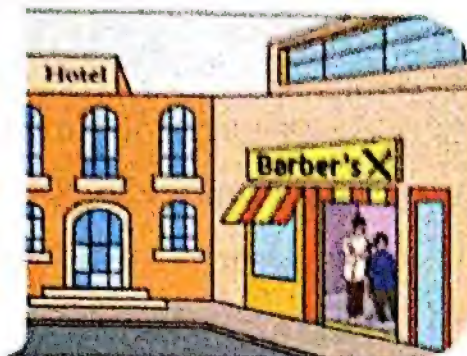
**B** Point and say the words. اشر الى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة واذكرها.

**C** Listen and point. استمع واطر

Man : Are you open on Sundays ?

Barber : Yes. I'm open from  
7:00 to 10:00.

Man : Good. I need a haircut.



Daughter : Dad, can we see the show ?

Father : Sure. How much does it  
cost to get in ?

Daughter : It's one pound for adults.  
Children are free.



Boy : Let me help you, Miss Sarah.

Woman : Thanks. Be careful. They're  
heavy.

Boy : No problem.



## Language Functions

Offering help :

تقديم المساعدة :

Let me help you, اسم الشخص.

دعني اساعدك ، .....

- Let me help you, Miss Sarah.

- Thanks.





## General

# Exercises on Word Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1. father - mother - daughter - bridge ( )

2. problem - get - borrow - walk ( )

3. careful - nice - book - good ( )

4. take - learn - read - train ( )

5. bank - train station - hotel - taxi ( )

(Alexandria - Agami 2020)

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. .... does it cost for children ? (امتحان مجمع السويس ٢٠٢١)

a. How much    b. How long    c. How many    d. How tall

2. I went to the barber's shop to get a .....

a. haircut    b. money    c. sandwich    d. shoes

3. Soaad needs to go to the ..... to get some money.

a. post office    b. school    c. theatre    d. bank

(امتحان مجمع الدقهلية ٢٠٢١)

4. We should walk ..... the pavement.

a. to    b. for    c. of    d. on

5. **SB** Let ..... help you, Miss Mona.

a. I    b. mine    c. my    d. me

6. You can borrow a book from the school .....

a. train station    b. library    c. pavement    d. hotel

7. This box is heavy, so I ..... carry it.

a. aren't    b. isn't    c. can't    d. doesn't

8. I went to the ..... to send a letter.

a. library    b. station    c. bank    d. post office

(Giza 2017) / امتحان مجمع كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢١



### 3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

اعمل جملات صحيحة من الكلمات الآتية :

1. see - Can - we - show - the ?

2. got - I - a haircut - the - at - barber's shop.

### 4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"My school"

اكتب فقرة من سبع جمل :  
مدرستي في تواركة الآتية :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



### Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

أهم المفردات اللغوية التي وردت في درس الـ (WORD TIME)

library	مكتبة	train station	محطة قطار
barber's shop	صالون حلاقة	post office	مكتب بريد
bank	بنك	pavement	رصيف مشاة
hotel	فندق	bridge	كوبري / جسر
theatre	مسرح	school	مدرسة

**Stop here!**



• اختار مصدر للأمر الشريف.  
• طبق ما تعلمته واختر ذكالك.



# Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 3 & 4 WB pages 3 & 4

## Focus Time

**A** Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Prepositions of location

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

**1** beside بجانب



**2** behind خلف



**3** across from  
في الجهة المقابلة لـ  
(على الجانب الآخر من)



**4** in front of أمام



**5** near بالقرب من



**6** above أعلى



**B** Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



Was there a library beside the post office?



Yes, there was.





# Language Focus



تعليم واعلم

1

**There is** يوجد (للمفرد) **There are** يوجد (للمجمع)

**There is**

+

**singular noun**

اسم مفرد (يحد / لا يحد)

ex. There is a train station near the bank.

**Affirmative Statements**

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

**There are**

+

**plural noun**

اسم جمع

ex. There are two banks next to the library.

**There is not (isn't)**

**Negative statements**

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

**There are not (aren't)**

ex. There isn't a post office behind the bank.

ex. There aren't three bridges above the train station.

2

**There was** + اسم مفرد

◀ تستخدم بمعنى (كان يوجد) و يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد.

تستخدم "There was" للتحدث عن شيء كان موجود في الماضي.

الاثبات Affirmative

**There was**

+

اسم مفرد

ex. There was a bank near the bridge.

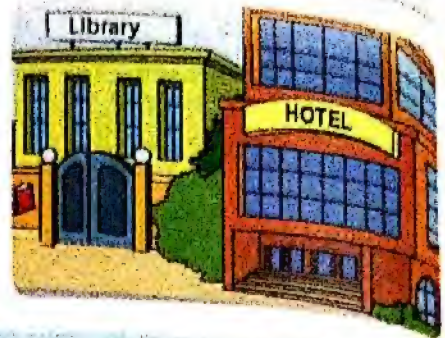




Negative النفي

there wasn't + اسم مفرد

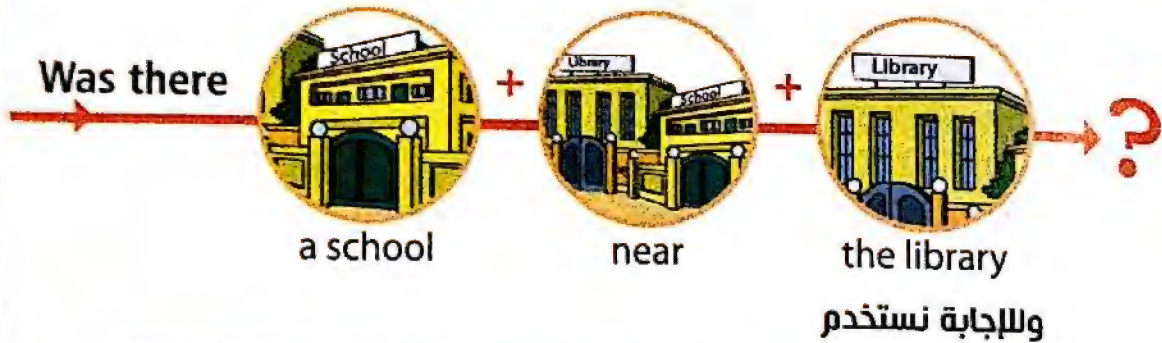
ex. There wasn't a school behind the hotel.



3 Was there .....?

تستخدم للسؤال عن الاسم المفرد بمعنى (هل كان يوجد .... ؟)

Was there → a/an place مكان + the place مكان ؟



الإجابة المثبتة



Yes, there was.

الإجابة المنفية



No, there wasn't.

C Look at page (2). Listen and point.

انظر إلى صفحة (٢) في كتاب الطالب ثم استمع وأشر.

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع اختبار الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالمنهج.





## Exercise on Language Focus

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Was there a barber's shop ..... front of the school ?  
a. from                      b. of                      c. in                      d. on

(North Sinai 2014 - Souhag 2015)

2. Was ..... a post office near the train station ?

(امتحان مجمع القاهرة ٢٠٢١)

- a. there                      b. theirs                      c. their                      d. they

3. There was a library ..... the hospital.

- a. across                      b. beside                      c. next                      d. front

4. The bank is ..... to the post office. (امتحان مجمع دقهلية ٢٠٢١)

- a. next                      b. across                      c. in front                      d. between

5. There was a hotel ..... the barber's shop.

- a. from                      b. in                      c. above                      d. under

6. Was there a hotel beside the school ? - Yes, there .....

- a. wasn't                      b. was                      c. weren't                      d. were

(امتحان مجمع الاسكندرية ٢٠٢١)

7. Was there a library near the hospital ? - No, there .....

(Alexandria 2020) (امتحان مجمع الاسكندرية ٢٠٢١)

- a. doesn't                      b. don't                      c. weren't                      d. wasn't

8. The chair is ..... the desk.

- a. between                      b. behind                      c. across                      d. next

2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. hotel - behind - The - is - bank - the. (Dakahlia - East Mansoura 2019)

2. Was - beside - the - post office - there - a school ?



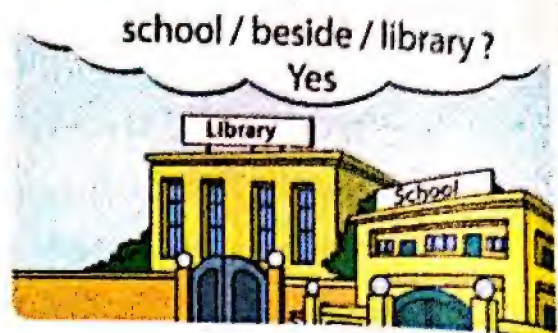
# Practice Time

**A** Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.  
 اسمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

Was there a bank near the school? Yes, there was.

1 Was there a school beside the library?

Yes, there was.



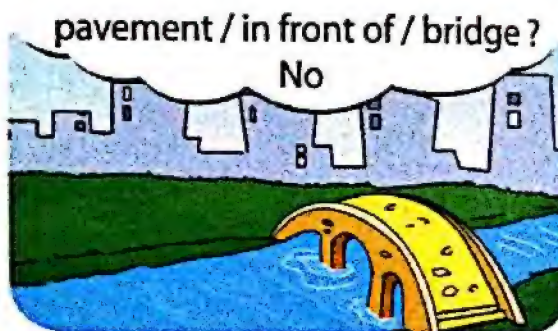
2 Was there a train station behind the hotel?

.....



3 Was there a pavement in front of the bridge?

.....



4 Was there a barber's shop near the post office?

Yes, there was.





5



school / across from / hotel ?

No

?



No, there wasn't.



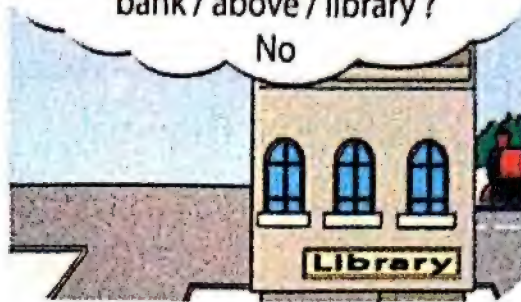
6



Was there a bank above the library ?

bank / above / library ?

No



7



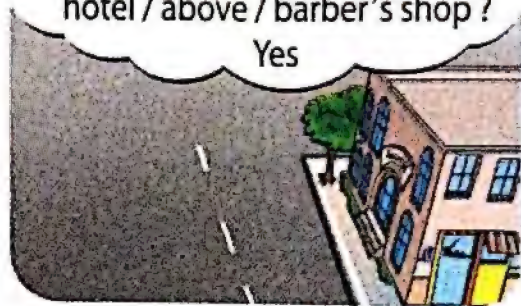
hotel / above / barber's shop ?

Yes

?



Yes, there was.



8



pavement / behind / theatre?

No

?



No, there wasn't.



B

Look at page (2). Practise with a partner.

انظر الى الصورة صفحة (٢) في كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.





## General

# Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1. Where - When - is - What

( ..... )

2. include - near - in - between

( ..... )

3. Thursday - Monday - behind - Friday

( ..... )

4. school - post office - above - museum

( ..... )

5. plane - bus - near - train

( ..... )

2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

اقرأ الفقرة واجب على الأسئلة :

My name is Sama. I'm in class six. I go to school on foot. My school is near my house. I always walk on the pavement. My school is across from the post office. There's a library in my school. I always read books in the library. It's beside the music room. There's a train station behind my school, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sama is ..... years old.

a. ten

b. twelve

c. six

d. eight

2. Sama's house is ..... her school.

a. above

b. between

c. far

d. near

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where can Sama read books ?

.....

4. Why does Sama go to school on foot ?

.....



### 3 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:

أكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني من سبع جمل

اكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني من سبع جمل :

Write an email to your friend Ali to tell him about your school library. Your name is Amr and your email address is amr@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com.

To : .....  
From : .....  
Subject : .....

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

### 4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. behind - hotel - Was - there - the - a school ?

.....

2. post office - beside - There - the - a library - wasn't.

.....

### 5 Punctuate the following sentences :

ضع علامات الترقيم في الجمل الآتية :

1. was there a train station near Hager s house ?

.....

2. no it wasn't.

.....



# Reading & Your Time

SB pages 5&6 WB pages 5&6

## Key Vocabulary

history	تاريخ	flavour	طعم / مذاق
churn	مخضبة (ماكينة آيس كريم)	a lot of	كثير من
cone	مخروط	invent	يخترع
dessert	حلو / الحلو (بعد الوجبات)	factory	مصنع
grocery store	محل بقالة كبير	vanilla	فانيليا

## Notes

١. كلمة (history) المقصود بها السرد التاريخي لشيء معين. أما تاريخ يوم معين يسمى (date).

٢. يخترع invent (شيء لم يكن موجود من قبل).

## Active Vocabulary

first	أول	chocolate	شيكولاتة
favourite	مفضل	tomato	طماطم
every	كل	pickle	مخلل
but	لكن	too	أيضاً / جداً
kind	نوع	cards	بطاقات / كوتشينة
long	طويل	Who ... ?	من ... ؟
town	مدينة صغيرة		

## Notes

١. تستخدم أداة الإستفهام (Who..?) للسؤال عن الفاعل العاقل ويأتي الفعل بعدها مباشرة.

- Who invented the ice cream ?

٢. تستخدم كلمة (favourite) كصفة بمعنى مفضل ويأتي بعدها اسم وتستخدم كاسم بمعنى شيء مفضل وغالباً تأتي في نهاية الجملة.

- What are your favourite flavours ?

- Vanilla and chocolate are my favourites.



## New places &amp; People

## أماكن وأشخاص جدد

the United States of America (USA)	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	St. Louis	سانت لويس (مدينة أمريكية)
America	أمريكا	Nancy Johnson	نانسي جونسون (اختارمت أول آلة يدوية لصناعة الأيس كريم)
New York	مدينة نيويورك	John Montagu	جون مونتاجو (مخترع الساندوتش)
Baltimore	بالتيمور (مدينة أمريكية)		

## Notes

١. يستخدم حرف الجر (in) قبل الأماكن الكبيرة كالمدين والبلاد وقبل السنوات والشهور.  
 - in the United States      - in 1851      - in May  
 ٢. ويستخدم حرف الجر (at) قبل الأماكن الصغيرة.  
 - at every grocery store      - at home

## Conjugation of verbs

## تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
invent	يخترع	invented		make	يصنع	made	
open	يفتح	opened		buy	يشترى	bought	
use	يستخدم	used		find	يجد	found	
call	يدعى / يسمي / يتصل	called		eat	ياكل	ate	
decide	يقرر	decided		know	يعرف	knew	

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- |                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. We don't know.  | ١. نحن لا نعرف.     |
| 2. get a haircut   | ٢. يحصل على قصة شعر |
| 3. make a sandwich | ٣. يصنع ساندوتشاً   |
| 4. play cards      | ٤. يلعب كوتشينة     |
| 5. one of          | ٥. واحد من          |
| 6. use for         | ٦. يستخدم لـ        |
| 7. kind of         | ٧. نوع من           |



## Reading Time

### Ice cream in America

SB page 5

#### Introduction : مقدمة

"Ice cream in America" is a passage about the history of ice cream in America and its different flavours.

الآيس كريم هي الحلوى هي فقرة عن تاريخ الآيس كريم في أمريكا ونكهاته المختلفة.

#### Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. In 1843, Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream churn.

١. اخترعت نانسي جونسون أول مخفظة (ماكينة لصناعة الآيس كريم) في عام ١٨٤٣.

2. In 1851, the first ice cream factory opened in Baltimore.

٢. تم افتتاح أول مصنع للآيس كريم في مدينة بالتيمور في عام ١٨٥١.

3. In 1896, a man in St. Louis made the first ice cream cone.

٣. قام رجل من مدينة سانت لويس بصناعة أول مخروط للآيس كريم في عام ١٨٩٦.

4. In 1876, the first ice cream shop opened in New York.

٤. تم افتتاح أول محل آيس كريم في مدينة نيويورك في عام ١٨٧٦.

5. Ice cream has a lot of flavours.

٥. يوجد العديد من نكهات الآيس كريم.

### A Listen and read along.

استمع واقرا.

#### Ice Cream in America

Who invented<sup>(1)</sup> ice cream? We don't know, but ice cream has a long history<sup>(2)</sup> in the United States.

In 1843, Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream churn<sup>(3)</sup>. The first ice cream factory opened in Baltimore in 1851. A man in St. Louis made the first ice cream cone<sup>(4)</sup> in 1896. Ice cream is now one of America's favourite desserts<sup>(5)</sup>.



#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) اخترع
- (2) تاريخ
- (3) ماكينة الآيس كريم
- (4) مخروط
- (5) الحلوى



The first ice cream shop opened in New York in 1876. Now there is an ice cream shop in every town, and you can buy ice cream at every grocery store<sup>(6)</sup>. You can find a lot of flavours<sup>(7)</sup>, from tomato to pickle<sup>(8)</sup>. America's favourite flavours are vanilla<sup>(9)</sup> and chocolate. What's your favourite?

(6) محل بقالة كبير

(7) مذاق / نكهات

(8) مخلل

(9) فانيوليا

## Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You can ..... ice cream at every grocery store.  
a. read                      b. open                      c. make                      d. buy
- SB** My best ..... is vanilla. (Fayoum - Ista 2020)  
a. size                      b. kind                      c. colour                      d. flavour
- Ice cream has a long ..... in the United States.  
a. maths                      b. science                      c. Arabic                      d. history  
(امتحان مجمع البحيرة ٢٠٢١)
- You can have ice cream with different .....  
(امتحان مجمع بنى سويف ٢٠٢١)  
a. churns                      b. desserts                      c. flavours                      d. stores
- SB** Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream .....  
a. sandwich                      b. factory                      c. churn                      d. shop
- A man in st. Louis made the first ice cream ..... in 1896.  
a. star                      b. square                      c. circle                      d. cone
- The first ice cream factory ..... in Baltimore in 1851.  
a. opened                      b. made                      c. sold                      d. include
- WB** John Montagu ..... the sandwich in 1750.  
(Damietta 2019)  
a. played                      b. went                      c. invented                      d. read



## B Listen and circle True or False.

صحيح او خاطئ دائرة حول (True) او (False)

1. We know who invented ice cream.
2. The first ice cream churn was invented in 1846.
3. The first ice cream shop opened in New York.
4. Americans don't like vanilla ice cream.

True False

True False

True False

True False

## C Read the question. Write the answer.

اقرأ السؤال. واكتب الإجابة.

1. When did the first ice cream shop open ?

The first ice cream shop opened in 1876.

2. Who invented the first ice cream churn ?

3. Where did the first ice cream factory open ?

4. What flavours are America's favourites ?

America's favourite flavours are vanilla and chocolate.

### The Sandwich

WB page 5

#### Introduction : مقدمة

"The Sandwich" is a passage about the history of the sandwich.

'الساندوتش' هي فقرة عن تاريخ الساندوتش.

#### Add to your information : اضع إلى معلوماتك :

One night, John Montagu was very hungry, but he was too busy playing cards to stop for a meal. So he ordered a waiter to bring him meat between two slices of bread.





ذات ليلة، كان جون مونتاجو جائعاً جداً ولكنه كان مشغولاً جداً بلعب الكوتشينة لدرجة أنه لا يستطيع أن يتوقف عن اللعب من أجل تناول وجبة طعام لذلك طلب من الجرسون أن يحضر له لحم بين شريحتين من الخبز. (ومن هنا جاءت فكرة الساندوتش)

### نقاط رئيسية : Main Points

1. In 1750, John Montagu invented the sandwich.

١. اخترع جون مونتاجو الساندوتش عام ١٧٥٠.

2. The sandwich is now one of America's favourite foods.

٢. يعد الآن الساندوتش واحداً من الأطعمة المفضلة في أمريكا.

اقرأ النص في صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

## Your Time

### A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. Is there a library near your house ?

.....

2. Is there a library near your school ?

.....

3. Is there a theatre beside your house ?

.....

4. Is there a bank across from your school ?

.....

### Quiz



اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات



**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. .... invented ice cream ?  
 a. What                      b. When                      c. Who                      d. Where
2. Where did the first ice cream factory ..... ?  
 a. open                      b. opened                      c. opening                      d. opens
3. You can find a lot ..... favourite flavours.  
 a. of                      b. on                      c. at                      d. in
4. My best ..... is vanilla.  
 a. flavour                      b. kind                      c. colour                      d. size
5. **A :** Where can you borrow books ? **B :** From .....  
 a. library                      b. hotel                      c. train station                      d. theatre

**C Review. Read and write the answers.**

راجع. اقرأ واكتب إجابتك على الأسئلة من خلال معرفتك.

1. Do you like going to museums ?  
 .....
2. Is there a bookshop beside your school ?  
 .....
3. How do you go to school ?  
 .....
4. Where do you get a haircut ?  
 .....





## General

# Exercises Reading & Your Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. The first ice cream \_\_\_\_\_ opened in New York.  
a. shop                      b. hotel                      c. water                      d. juice
2. Ice cream is now one of America's favourite \_\_\_\_\_ .  
(امتحان مجمع الجيزة ٢٠٢١)  
a. drinks                      b. desserts                      c. deserts                      d. food
3. America's favourite \_\_\_\_\_ are vanilla and chocolate.  
(امتحان مجمع المنوفية ٢٠٢١)  
a. ice cream                      b. factories                      c. desserts                      d. flavours
4. Where did the first ice cream factory \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
a. opened                      b. open                      c. opens                      d. opening
5. You can buy ice cream \_\_\_\_\_ every shop. (امتحان مجمع الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢١)  
a. on                      b. at                      c. of                      d. by
6. The first ice cream shop opened \_\_\_\_\_ 1876.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. by
7. Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream \_\_\_\_\_ .  
(امتحان مجمع الغربية ٢٠٢١)  
a. barn                      b. park                      c. churn                      d. basket
8. \_\_\_\_\_ invented ice cream ? (Cairo - Ain Shams 2018 / Sharkia - Souhag 2017)  
a. When                      b. What                      c. Where                      d. Who

### 2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1. vanilla - cooked - opened - invented (.....)
2. New York - United States - on - Baltimore (.....)
3. store - factory - pickle - shop (.....)
4. ice cream - museum - sandwich - cake (.....)
5. How - What - Where - often (.....)

### 3 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة و اجب على الأسئلة :

Hi! I'm Ali. I own an ice cream sandwich shop. It's called Cold Sandwiches. In 2011, I bought my first ice cream churn. I made ice cream at home. Then, in 2012, I bought an ice cream shop.

I use all kinds of ice cream, from chocolate and strawberry to banana. Come over to Cold Sandwiches and buy your favourite ice cream sandwich.

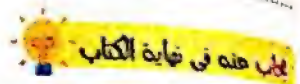


**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. In 2012, Ali ..... an ice cream shop.  
 a. bought      b. called      c. used      d. made
2. You can ..... ice cream sandwiches at Ali's shop.  
 a. sell      b. use      c. buy      d. own

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. When did Ali buy his first ice cream churn ?  
 .....
4. Who is the owner مالك / صاحب of Cold Sandwiches ?  
 .....

**4 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :**

Write an email to your friend Mona. Tell her about the ice cream history. Your name is Fatma. Your email address is fatma@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is mona@yahoo.com.

To : .....  
 From : .....  
 Subject : .....

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

(Sharkia - Menia El-Kamh 2018)

**5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

1. invented - Who - cream - ice ? (Cairo 2017)  
 .....
2. Ice cream - buy - You - everywhere - can. (Luxor 2020)  
 .....





# How to write

Unit 1

## Unit 1

### Step 1 Warm up

1. Was there a library beside the post office?  
- Yes, there was.
2. Was there a pavement in front of the bridge?  
- No, there wasn't.

### Step 2 Word Practice

• Choose and write the word :

bridge - barber's shop - hotel



1. Was there a \_\_\_\_\_ near the post office?  
- Yes, there was.



2. Was there a \_\_\_\_\_ beside the train station?  
- Yes, there was.

### Step 3 Grammar practice

• Choose and write the word :

there was - above - wasn't

1. Was there a school beside the library?  
- Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Was there a bank \_\_\_\_\_ the library?  
- No, there wasn't.

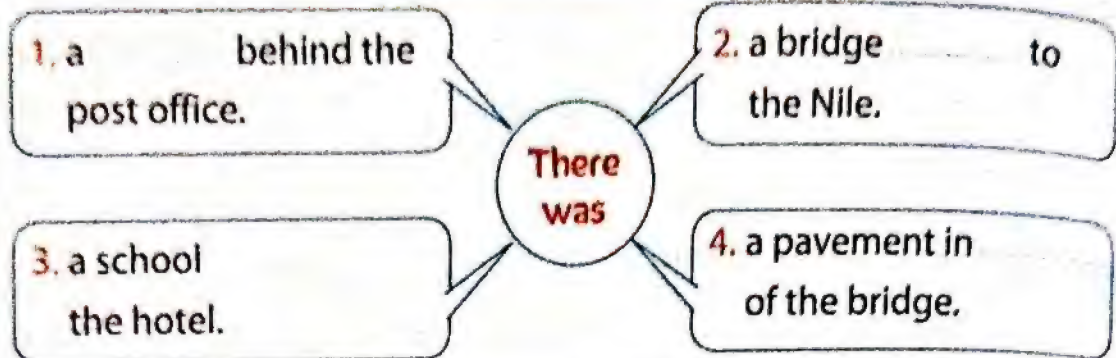


## Step 4 Your idea web

الخطوة الرابعة: شبكة أفكار خاصة بالكتابة.  
يقوم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به (تكوين جمل) باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي درسها.

• Choose and complete the idea web.

beside - hotel - next - front



## Step 5 Your writing

الخطوة الخامسة: كتابة موضوعك.

بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادراً على كتابة موضوع إنشائي أو بريد إلكتروني.

• Read, cut and stick.

"The Egyptian Museum"

"My favourite flavour of ice cream"

Cut & Paste here  
from page 293

Cut & Paste here  
from page 293

### Writing checklist

- ☐ 1. My sentences begin with a capital letter.
- ☐ 2. My sentences end with a full stop.
- ☐ 3. My words are in the correct order.





تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل واسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. are - **We** - daily - open.

2. invented - churn - **Nancy Johnson** - Ice cream - the first.

	فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. your - **Number** - papers - to five - from one.

2. book - **Don't** - your - close.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(i) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. get in - **How much** - to - cost - does - it ?

2. did - **When** - shop - open - the ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة ؟
1					
2			the shop		

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. that - **Does** - Mummy - the - rooms - include ?

2. show - **Can** - see - the - we ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة ؟
1				
2				





# Test your skills

## Unit 1

If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

إذا حصلت على ● فأنت بحاجة إلى مراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

### 1 Listening skill

Listen to the conversation.  
Listen and tick (✓).

الاستماع إلى المحادثة من الصفحة  
التالية. استمع وضع علامة (✓) أمام  
الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. What are your hours?

☐ We're open from  
9:00 to 7:00.

☐ Yes. We're open daily.

### 2 Reading skill

Read and tick (✓).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة  
الصحيحة.

2. Which word is correct?

There ..... a train station  
near the bank.

☐ are

☐ is

### 3 Writing skill

3. Write two sentences about  
the Egyptian Museum.

اكتب جملتين عن المتحف المصري.

### My Spelling Test

Look and write.

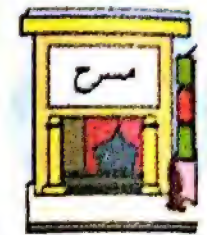
1. ....



2. ....



3. ....



4. ....



Self evaluation

التقييم الذاتي

My work in Unit is:

● ممتاز

● جيد جداً

● جيد

● غير جيد

Color





1. Conversation	2. Vocabulary	3. Language Focus
<p>Receptionist : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you?</p> <p><b>Kareem</b> : Hi! What are your hours?</p> <p>Receptionist : We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.</p> <p><b>Kareem</b> : Are you open on Fridays?</p> <p>Receptionist : Yes. We're open daily.</p> <p><b>Kareem</b> : How much does it cost to get in?</p> <p>Receptionist : It's two pounds for Egyptians and twenty pounds for foreigners. Children under five are free.</p> <p><b>Kareem</b> : Does that include the Mummy rooms?</p> <p>Receptionist : No, it doesn't.</p> <p><b>Kareem</b> : Thanks for your help.</p> <p>Receptionist : You're welcome. Have a nice day.</p>	<p>barber's shop صالون حلاقة</p> <p>hotel فندق</p> <p>post office مكتب بريد</p> <p>train station محطة القطار</p> <p>pavement رصيف مشاة</p> <p>bridge كوبري</p> <p>theatre مسرح</p> <p>library مكتبة</p> <p>bank بنك</p> <p>school مدرسة</p>	<p><b>1- Prepositions of places :</b> حروف جر خاصة بالمكان</p> <p>beside بجانب / بجوار</p> <p>across from في الجهة المقابلة</p> <p>in front of أمام</p> <p>near بالقرب من</p> <p>above فوق / أعلى</p> <p>behind خلف</p> <p><b>2- Was there ... ?</b></p> <p>تستخدم للسؤال عن الاسم المفرد بمعنى « حل » « كان يوجد ... ؟ »</p> <p>وللإجابة المختصرة نستخدم : اجابة مختصرة مثبتة</p> <p>- Yes, there was. اجابة مختصرة منفية</p> <p>- No, there wasn't.</p>



A. Read and circle. اقرأ وعب دائرة.

1. Good night.	the Egyptian day.	Marker. Mountain. Museum.	will can could	helped I helping you ? help
----------------	-------------------	---------------------------	----------------	-----------------------------

2. Hi! What Why Where	are its your his	hours ?
-----------------------	------------------	---------

3. Where Were We're	open for from	four 9:00 to two 7:00. too
---------------------	---------------	----------------------------

4. Are Own Our	you open for in	Fridays ?
----------------	-----------------	-----------

5. Yes. We're open	day. dance. daily.
--------------------	--------------------

6. How many much money	does it cost to get out ? get in ? get one ?
------------------------	--

7. It's five pounds for animals apples adults	and two pounds for child. children. chimps.
---	---

B. Read the question. Write the answer. اقرأ السؤال. اكتب الإجابة.

- Cairo Film Theatre
- How much does it cost for children ?
  - Is it open on Sundays ?
  - How much does it cost for adults ?
- Adults: LE 5.00  
Children: LE 2.00  
Open: Saturday to Friday

A. Look and write. انظر واكتب.



- barber's shop
- hotel
- post office
- theatre
- bank
- school
- pavement
- bridge
- train station
- library

B. Where were they ? Look at A and write. أين كانوا ؟ انظر إلى A واكتب.

- He was at the barber's shop.
- She was at the hotel.
- They were at post office.



A. Look and write.



B. Read and circle True or False. اقرأ وقم بكتابة True أو False



1. There's a train station near the bank. True False
2. There's a barber's shop beside the library. True False
3. There's a post office behind the bank. True False

C. Read the question. Write the answer. اقرأ السؤال وكتب الإجابة



1. Was there a school across from the theatre ?
2. Was there a bridge above the barber's shop ?
3. Was there a pavement in front of the hotel ?

A. Read and write.



B. Write the question in your notebook.



1. bridge / above / train station ?  
Was there a bridge above the train station ?  
No, there wasn't.
2. hotel / near / post office ?
3. barber's shop / behind / hotel ?







# Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع اختبار الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالمنهج.

unit

1

## 1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

(القاهرة - الرباط ٢٠١٨ - امتحان مجمع القلمية - عبور ٢٠٢١)

daily	يوميًا	theatre	مسرح
pound	جنيه	pavement	رصيف
Mummy rooms	حجرات المومياوات	bridge	كوبرى
school	مدرسة	cone	مخروط
library	مكتبة	churn	مخضّة (ماكينة آيس كريم)
barber's shop	محل حلاقة	flavour	طعم / مذاق
post office	مكتب بريد	grocery store	محل بقالة كبير

## 2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

(الجيزة - عمرانية ٢٠١٩ - امتحان مجمع كفر الشيخ - سيدى سالم ٢٠٢١)

1. There is <sup>(1)</sup> a train station near <sup>(2)</sup> the bank.
2. There wasn't <sup>(3)</sup> a school behind the hotel.
3. Was <sup>(4)</sup> there a school near the library ?

### Check Language

- (1) يوجد (للمفرد) في زمن المضارع
- (2) حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان بمعنى بالقرب من
- (3) لا يوجد (للمفرد) «النفى في الماضي»
- (4) صيغة الاستفهام بهل... ؟ مع فعل يكون في الماضي

## 3. Language functions

وظائف لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

(الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠١٧)

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• What are your hours ?	► - We're open from 9 : 00 to 7 : 00.
• Are you open on Fridays ?	► - Yes. We're open daily.
• How much does it cost ?	► - It's two pounds.
• Does that include the Mummy rooms ?	► - No, it doesn't.





# Test 1 on Unit 1

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations  
مختار على الوحدة من امتحانات المحافظات والديارات



## A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. a. I go to the Egyptian Museum.  
b. It's the Egyptian Museum.
2. a. Nineteen pounds.  
b. Ninety pounds. (Giza 2015)
3. a. Who invented the first telephone?  
b. Who invented the first ice cream churn? (Luxor 2017 - Fayoum 2017)
4. a. When did the first ice cream shop open?  
b. Where did the first ice cream factory open?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل

- Adel : Is there a theatre near your house?  
Ali : No, there isn't. There is a (1) .....  
Adel : (2) ..... are its hours?  
Ali : It's open from 9:00 to 7:00 .  
Adel : How much does it (3) ..... to get in ?  
Ali : It's five (4) .....

(Cairo 2016 / Assiut 2017 / Giza - Al-Omraneyah 2019)

## B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Pupils go to the ..... to enjoy reading books. (Cairo - Al Sahel 2020)  
a. cinema      b. museum      c. library      d. theatre
2. In the museum, children under five can get in for ..... . They don't pay money.  
a. cost      b. fine      c. food      d. free
3. My best ice cream ..... is vanilla. (امتحان مجمع المنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢١)  
a. class      b. number      c. colour      d. flavour (امتحان مجمع أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢١)
4. Was there a school across from the theatre ? No, there .....  
a. aren't      b. isn't      c. wasn't      d. weren't (امتحان مجمع قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢١)



5. Ice cream has a ..... history. (امتحان مجمع الفلوية - فلوب ٢٠٢١)  
 a. long                      b. bad                      c. hungry                      d. big
6. .... a nice weekend, Ashraf. (امتحان مجمع الفلوية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢١)  
 a. Have                      b. Has                      c. Having                      d. Had
7. We are ..... daily except on holidays. (امتحان مجمع البحيرة - دمهور ٢٠٢١)  
 a. open                      b. opened                      c. opens                      d. opening
8. .... invented the first ice cream churn ? - Nancy Johnson. (امتحان مجمع المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢١)  
 a. What                      b. When                      c. Who                      d. Where

**4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1. theatre - cinema - play - museum (Fayoum - Tamia 2020) (.....)
2. of - between - on - March (Menia 2020) (.....)
3. Tuesday - April - May - August (Suez 2018) (.....)
4. eat - help - ice cream - walk (Ismailia 2014) (.....)
5. post office - hotel - May - bank (Beheira 2017) (.....)

**5 Read the passage and answer the questions:**

اقرأ الفقرة واجب عن الأسئلة :

Last week, Hoda and her father went to the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. It is open daily from 9:00 to 7:00. It's not expensive to get in. It's two pounds for Egyptians and twenty pounds for foreigners. Children under five are free. It is a nice place. They will go there again and again.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Hoda went to the ..... with her father.  
 a. bank                      b. theatre  
 c. cinema                      d. Egyptian Museum
2. The Egyptian Museum is a ..... place.  
 a. bad                      b. sad                      c. nice                      d. hard

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. How much does it cost for foreigners to get in ? (Qena 2017)

4. When is the Egyptian Museum open ?



## C

## Writing

أكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني من سبع جمل

### 6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

أكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني من سبع جمل

Write an email to your friend Mohamed to tell him about the dessert you ate. Your name is Mazen. Your email address is mazen@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is mohamed@yahoo.com.

To :  
From :  
Subject :

(Souhag 2018)

### 7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. invent - When - the - did - John - sandwich ?

(Beni Suef - Samesta 2020)

2. best - is - vanilla - My - flavour.

(Qena 2020)

### 8 Punctuate the following sentences :

ضع علامات الترقيم في الجمل الآتية :

1. when did the first ice cream shop open

(South Sinai 2015)

2. In 1843, nancy johnson invented the first ice cream churn.

(Dakahlia 2015)





# Test 2 on Unit 1



• Understand

• Apply

• Create

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

تنويه

## A Listening

**1 Listen and circle:** استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة:

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. a. We're open from 9:00 to 6:00.  
b. We're open from 10:00 to 8:00.
2. a. At the library.  
b. At the barber's shop.
3. a. Were you open on Fridays?  
b. Are you open on Fridays?
4. a. What flavours are your favourite?  
b. What flavours are America's favourite?

**2 Listen and complete:** استمع إلى معلمك واكمل:

Ahmed : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum.

How can I help you ?

Sherif : Hi! What are your (1) ..... ?

Ahmed : We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.

Sherif : Are you open on (2) ..... ?

Ahmed : Yes, we're open (3) ..... .

Sherif : Thank you for your (4) ..... .

## B Reading

**3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There was a barber's shop ..... our house.  
a. front                      b. across                      c. next                      d. beside
2. **SB** ..... that include the Mummy rooms ?  
a. Are                      b. Is                      c. Do                      d. Does
3. **SB** Are you open ..... Fridays ?  
a. at                      b. on                      c. in                      d. with



4. SB What did John Montagu use ..... the first sandwich ?  
 a. of                      b. about                      c. for                      d. with
5. How much does it cost to ..... in ?  
 a. do                      b. get                      c. work                      d. go
6. Pupils can borrow books from the school .....  
 a. cinema                      b. stadium                      c. library                      d. museum
7. Do you like going to the ..... to see the Mummy rooms ?  
 a. factory                      b. school                      c. museum                      d. park
8. They went to the ..... to see a show.  
 a. theatre                      b. bank                      c. school                      d. home

**4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1. next to - behind - between - hotel ( ..... )
2. vanilla - open - help - cost ( ..... )
3. bookshop - next to - post office - library ( ..... )
4. invented - made - opened - walk ( ..... )
5. Why - pavement - What - How ( ..... )

**5 Read the passage and answer the questions:**

اقرأ الفقرة وأجب على الأسئلة :

The sandwich is very famous in America. It was invented by an American man. He liked to eat a sandwich and play cards. It's now one of America's favourite foods. There's a sandwich shop in every town. You can make a sandwich at home, too!

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The sandwich was invented by a / an ..... man.  
 a. Italian                      b. French                      c. American                      d. Egyptian
2. He liked to eat a sandwich and ..... cards.  
 a. help                      b. have                      c. play                      d. make



**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. Is the sandwich one of America's favourite food ?

4. Where can you make a sandwich ?

**C Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:** اكتب فقرة مكونة من سبع جمل :

"Your visit to the Egyptian Museum"

عجائب هذه في نهاية الكتاب

**7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

اعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. me - Let - you - help.

2. cost - How - it - much - does ?

**8 Punctuate the following sentences :** ضع علامات الترقيم في الجمل الآتية :

1. can we see the show

2. there wasn't a train station behind the hospital





# Stop here!

## 1. Mini-test for Al-Azhar Students

مركز مصر للآثار الشريفة

### 1 Read and circle:

1. Does that include the Mummy rooms?  
a. No, it doesn't.                      b. No, it isn't.
2. What are your hours?  
a. Yes. We're open daily.              b. We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.
3. The train station is behind the hospital.  
a. Why do you go to the train station?  
b. Where is the train station?
4. I'm going to the Egyptian Museum.  
a. Where are you going?              b. What are you reading?

### 2 Punctuate the following sentence:

john montagu invented the sandwich

.....

## 2. Use your brain, think smart

يق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

### • Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. all - children - Are - free - under - five ?

.....

2. know - We - invented - who - the sandwich.

.....



## In the Restaurant

في المطعم



\* العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.  
 \* العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.  
 \* نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

## Listening/Speaking

- order food in a restaurant طلب طعام في المطعم
- express quantities of food & drink التعبير عن كميات الطعام والمشروبات
- identify speakers in a conversation التعرف على المتحدثين في محادثة

## Reading

- read a restaurant review قراءة مقال عن مطعم

## Vocabulary

- food and drink تعلم مفردات عن الأطعمة والمشروبات

## Grammar

- food quantities كيفية التعبير عن كميات الطعام
- Wh-questions with how much /many السؤال باستخدام أداة الاستفهام «كم» (للكمية وللعدد)

## لا إلتقان الوحدة :

• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.

• كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة والأبحاث بنهاية الكتاب.  
 • Master your term داخل الكراسة التفاعلية.



# Conversation Time

SB page 7 WB page 1

## Key Vocabulary

ready	جاهز / استعد	well done	ممتاز
order	طلب / أطلب	mood	مزاج
rare	نادر / ناعم اللحم	today's special	الطعام الخاص اليوم (الخاص)
medium	متوسط	restaurant	مطعم

## Notes

1. ready to + inf. مستعد للعمل

- I'm ready to go.

2. order

- He ordered fish.

نستخدم كفاعل بمعنى (أطلب) واسم بمعنى (أطلبها)

- I want my order well done.

حرف (ci) في كلمة (special) ينطقان /r/ مثل صوت حرف (ش) في اللغة العربية

## Active Vocabulary

have	يملك / يتناول	maybe	ربما
waitress	جرسونة	menu	قائمة طعام
walter	جرسون	salad	سلطة
soup	شوربة	delicious	لذيذ / شهى
steak	شريحة لحم بقرى (ستيك)	Sounds good.	يبدو جيدا.
baked potato	بطاطس مخبوزة في الفرن	spaghetti and meatballs	مكرونة اسباجتي
	(بطاطس مشوية بقشرها)		بقطع اللحم

## Notes

1. have

- I have a pen.

- I have spaghetti and meatballs.

2. look / sound + صفة

- It looks delicious. - It sounds good.

نستخدم مع الأشياء بمعنى يملك.

أما مع الأطعمة والمشروبات بمعنى يتناول.

نستخدم هذه الأفعال قبل الصفة بمعنى يبدو.

حرف (h) في كلمة (spaghetti) صامت (silent) لا ينطق.

## Conjugation of verbs

تعريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
order	يطلب	ordered		think	يعتقد	thought	
look	يبدو / ينظر	looked		have	يملك / يتناول	had	



## Exercise on Vocabulary

• Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المخالفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة.

1. one - four - soup - five (.....)
2. think - well done - order - bake (.....)
3. menu - delicious - rare - special (.....)
4. water - spaghetti - steak - meatballs (Qena 2018) (.....)
5. museum - have - school - restaurant (.....)

## In the Restaurant

في المطعم

• Characters شخصيات المحادثة



woman  
سيدة



waitress  
جرسونة



man  
رجل

• Topic موضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is in a restaurant. A man and a woman are hungry and ordering the waitress to bring them some good food.

محادثة اليوم في مطعم . رجل وسيدة يشعران بالجوع ويطلبان من الجرسونة أن تحضر لهم بعض الطعام الجيد.

**A** Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.



**Waitress :** Hello. Are you ready to order ?

**Woman :** I think so. I'll have a steak.

الجرسونة : أهلاً وسهلاً (بكم). هل أنتم جاهزون لطلب الطعام ؟

السيدة : أعتقد ذلك. سأتناول شريحة لحم بقرى.



Waitress: Here, medium, or well done?

Woman: Medium, please. And a baked potato.

Waitress: How about a salad?

Woman: Sounds good.

Man: What's today's special?

Waitress: Spaghetti and meatballs.

Man: Good! I'm in the mood for spaghetti. I'll have that.

Waitress: Here you are.

Man: Thanks. It looks delicious.

الآن هنا، متوسطة، أو  
جيدة جداً؟  
المرأة: متوسطة، من فضلكم. وأيضاً  
بطاطا مسلوقة.

النادلة: ماذا عن سلطة؟  
المرأة: يبدو جيداً.

الرجل: ماذا هو التخصص  
اليوم؟  
النادلة: سباجيتي وكروكيت.

الرجل: جيد! أنا في مزاج  
السباجيتي. سأأخذ ذلك.

النادلة: ها هي لكم.  
الرجل: شكراً. يبدو لذيذاً.

## Language Functions



### 1

هل أنت مستعد للترتيب؟  
هل أنت مستعد للترتيب؟  
أعتقد ذلك.



2

- عند السؤال عن درجة الطهي نستخدم :  
- Rare, medium, or well done ?  
• وللرد نستخدم :  
- Rare / Well done / Medium, please.



3

- عند السؤال عن الرأي نستخدم :  
- How about (noun اسم) / (inf. + ing)?  
- ماذا عن ... ؟  
- How about a salad ?  
• وللرد باستحسان الرأي نستخدم :  
- Sounds good. يبدو جيدًا.



4

- عند السؤال عن طبق اليوم (الخاص) الذي يقدمه المطعم نستخدم :  
- What's today's special ?  
- ما هو طبق اليوم (المميز) ؟







- 5
- Good! I'm in the mood for spaghetti. I'll have that.
  - Good! - حسناً / جيداً
  - I'm in the mood for ... - لدي رغبة في ...



- 6
- Here you are. - تفضل.
  - Thanks. - شكراً.

## Exercise on Language Functions

- Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلّمك واكمل
- Walter : Hello! Are you ready to order ?
- Mona : I think so. I'll have a steak and a (1) ..... potato.
- Walter : Rare, medium or (2) ..... done ?
- Mona : Medium, please.
- Walter : How (3) ..... a salad ?
- Mona : (4) ..... good.

(الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠) (Alexandria 2017 / Sharkia - Mashtool Elsouq 2019)

## B Role-play the conversation.

ثم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملاءك للمحادثة السابقة.





## General

# Exercises on Conversation Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



لنصوص الاستماع في نهاية الدرس

(Giza 2014)

### 1 Listen and circle: اكتب رقم الدرس في الجدول

1. a. Sounds good.  
b. Here you are.
2. a. Spaghetti and meatballs.  
b. Pizza and salad.
3. a. What will you have?  
b. What's today's special?
4. a. What will the man have?  
b. What will the woman have?

(Souhag 2017)

(Souhag - Tema 2018)

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I ..... in the mood for rice. (Cairo 2016 - Fayoum 2020)  
a. 'm                      b. will                      c. have                      d. can
2. I'm in the ..... for meatballs for lunch. (Qalyoubia - Benha 2020)  
a. sound                      b. mood                      c. way                      d. smell
3. We're going to eat dinner at a ..... (Qena - Dshna 2020)  
a. school                      b. theatre                      c. bank                      d. restaurant
4. I'm ready ..... (Port Said 2015 / Fayoum 2016-2017 / Old Cairo 2020)  
a. order                      b. ordering                      c. to order                      d. ordered
5. That meal ..... very delicious. (Matrouh 2014)  
a. look                      b. looks                      c. looking                      d. to look
6. At restaurants, you can choose food from a ..... (Assiut - Manfalout 2018)  
a. menu                      b. table                      c. shop                      d. pot
7. Are you ..... to order, sir? (امتحان مجمع الشرقية - أبو كبير ٢٠٢١)  
a. happy                      b. sad                      c. bad                      d. ready
8. Does she ..... a baked potato? (Cairo 2016 / Fayoum 2016)  
a. want                      b. wants                      c. wanted                      d. wanting



**3 Read the passage and answer the questions:**

Last week, my friend and I walked to a restaurant. The restaurant was clean and the food smelled good. When we reached there, the waiter came and asked what we wanted to eat and drink. Ahmed ordered fish and rice. I ordered spaghetti and meatballs. Then, we asked the waiter to bring us orange juice. We returned home at five o'clock.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The restaurant was .....  
a. dirty                      b. busy                      c. clean                      d. small
2. They went to the restaurant .....  
a. on foot                      b. by car                      c. by train                      d. by bus

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. When did they go to the restaurant ?  
.....

4. What did they drink ?  
.....

(Dakahlia 2015)

**4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

1. My - is - ready - to - order - brother.

(Dakahlia - Manzala 2020)

2. special - What's - today's ?

(South Sinai 2015 / Cairo - Road El Farag 2019 / Gharbia - Santa 2020)



## 5 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"In the restaurant"



محتاج منه في نهاية الكتاب

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 6 Punctuate the following sentences:

(Dakahlia - Manzala 2018)

1. I ll have a steak, please

.....

2. good ! i am in the mood for spaghetti.

(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)

.....



### Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

أهم الجمل التي وردت في درس الـ (CONVERSATION TIME)

1. Are you ready to order ?
2. Rare, medium or well done ?
3. How about a salad ?
4. What's today's special ?
5. I'm in the mood for spaghetti.

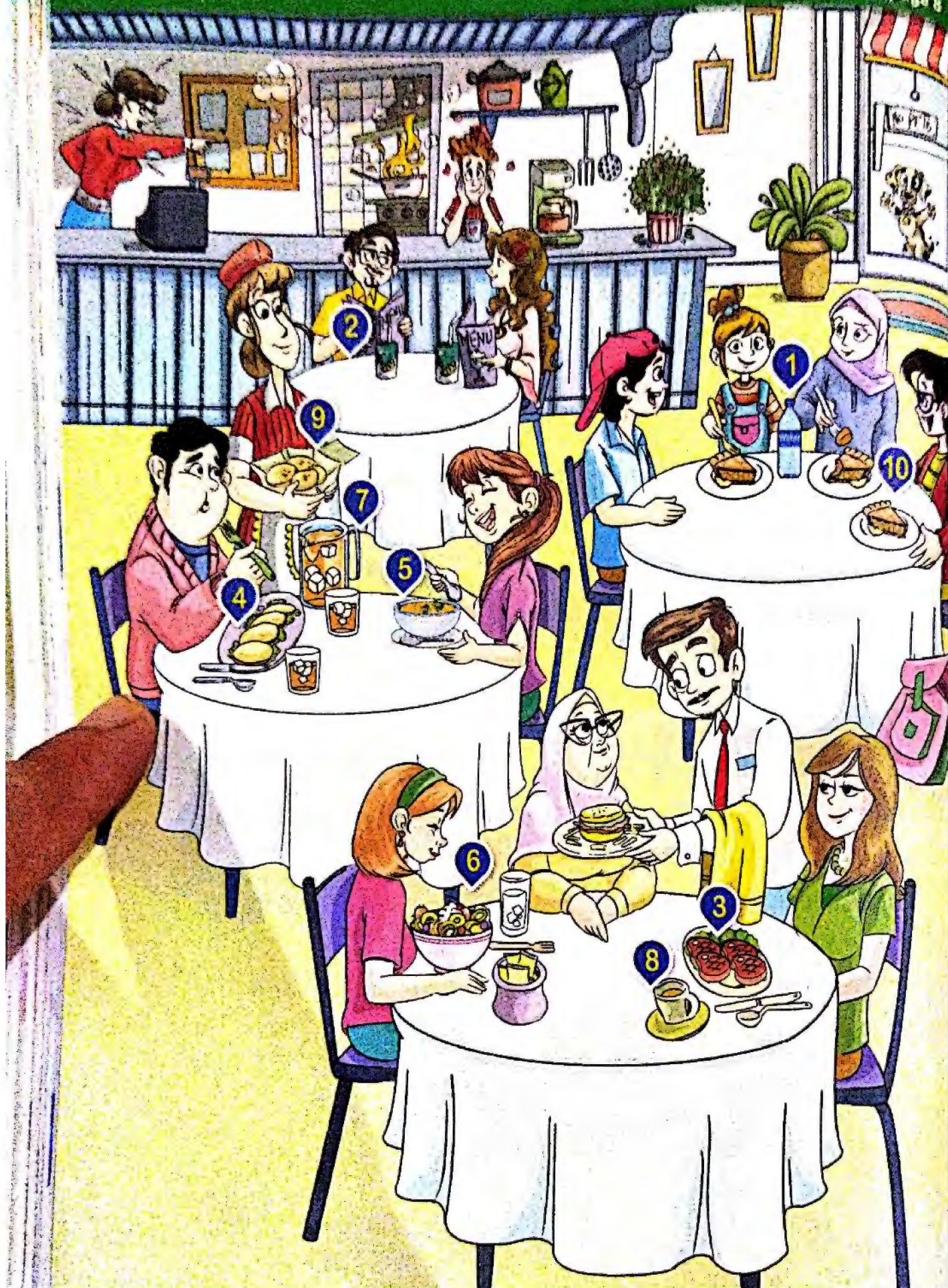
تنويه

تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية كل وحدة والملحق



# Word Time

SB page 8 WB page 8





## A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد

## Key Vocabulary

## Food and drinks

أطعمة ومشروبات

1 water



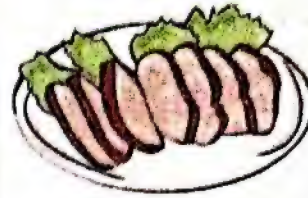
مياه

2 lemonade



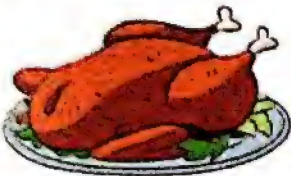
عصير ليمون

3 roast beef



لحم بقرى مشوى

4 roast turkey



ديك رومى مشوى

5 chicken soup



شوربة دجاج

6 fruit salad



سلطة فواكه

7 orange juice



عصير برتقال

8 coffee



قهوة

9 bread



خبز

10 apple pie



فطيرة تفاح

نستخدم مع (soup)

الفعل (eat) إذا كان بها

طعام مثل خضار أو لحم.



استمع



## Vocabulary

hot dog  
French fries  
family

سجق (نقانق)  
بطاطس (مقلية)  
أسرة / عائلة

tonight  
video  
tomorrow

الليلة  
تأجير فيديو  
غداً

## Conjugation of verbs

تعريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
rent	يؤجر	rented		eat	ياكل	ate	
watch	يشاهد	watched		drink	يشرب	drank	
want	يريد	wanted		see	يرى	saw	

## Important expressions and prepositions

1. I don't know.
2. rent a video
3. see a film
4. with my family
5. some more water
6. Sure !

١. لا أعرف.
٢. يستأجر فيديو
٣. يشاهد فيلماً
٤. مع عائلتي / أسرتي
٥. المزيد من المياه
٦. بالتأكيد / بالطبع !

**B** Point and say the words. اشر إلى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة واذكرها.

**C** Listen and point. استمع وأشر.

Boy : What are you going to have ?

Girl : I don't know.

Boy : I'm going to have some French fries and a hot dog.

Girl : That sounds good. I'll have that, too.





Mona : I rented a video. Do you want to watch it tonight ?

Kareem : I can't. I'm going to see a film with my family. How about tomorrow ?

Mona : Sure!



Waiter : Here you are.

Woman : Thanks. It looks delicious.

Waiter : How about some more water ?

Woman : No, thanks.



## Language Functions

### 1 Asking and expressing intention للسؤال والتعبير عما تنوى أن تفعله

- \* What are you going to have ?
- I'm going to have some French fries and a hot dog.
- I don't know.

« عند عدم المعرفة » نستخدم:

### 2 Offer

تقديم العرض

- \* Do you want to watch a film tonight ?
- I can't.

« عند الرفض » نستخدم:

## Remember



WB page 8

صيغة السؤال في زمن الماضي :

..... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + الفاعل + did + أداة الإستفهام

- What did you eat ?

I ate roast beef.

- What did they drink ?

They drank water.





# General Exercises on Word Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She likes drinking .....  
a. apple pie    b. turkey    c. coffee    d. bread
2. Do you want to ..... the film tonight?  
a. watch    b. watches    c. watching    d. watched
3. He ..... going to have some orange juice.  
a. are    b. is    c. has    d. does
4. **SB** I'm going to ..... a film.  
a. read    b. eat    c. see    d. have
5. **SB** I ..... a video. Do you want to watch it tonight?  
a. did    b. rented    c. cooked    d. played
6. **SB** ..... about tomorrow?  
a. Where    b. How    c. Why    d. When
7. I am going to have ..... salad.  
a. meat    b. roast    c. fruit    d. water
8. I ..... chicken soup for dinner last night.  
a. has    b. have    c. had    d. don't have

## 2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. delicious - good - bad - cake (Menia - Samaloot 2020) ( ..... )
2. meatballs - steak - salad - juice (Old Cairo 2020) ( ..... )
3. Who - What - Did - Which (Gharbia - Tanta 2020) ( ..... )
4. water - bread - orange juice - lemonade (Qena - Qus 2018) ( ..... )
5. rent - family - eat - go ( ..... )

## 3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. **SB** about - water - **How** - more - some ? (Sharkia 2018)  
.....
2. **SB** to - going - **I'm** - see - a film. (Qena 2017)  
.....



#### 4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Your favourite food"



#### 5 Punctuate the following sentences:

(The New Valley 2015 / Qena 2018)

1. no, I don't like salad

(Menia - Deer Mawas 2020)

2. what are Rodina and Heba going to have



#### Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

(WORD TIME) أهم المفردات اللغوية التي وردت في درس الـ

water	مياه	chicken soup	شورية دجاج
lemonade	عصير ليمون	fruit salad	سلطة فواكه
roast beef	لحم بقرى مشوى	orange juice	عصير برتقال
roast turkey	ديك رومى مشوى	coffee	قهوة
bread	خبز	apple pie	فطيرة تفاح

#### Quiz



اختبار تراكمى على الوحدات



# Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 9&10 WB pages 9&10

## Focus Time

### A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

1 a bottle of water



زجاجة ماء

2 a can of lemonade



علبة عصير ليمون

3 a slice of turkey



شريحة ديك رومي

4 a piece of apple pie



قطعة من فطيرة التفاح

5 a bowl of chicken soup



سلطانية شوربة دجاج

6 a glass of orange juice



كوب عصير برتقال

7 a cup of coffee



فنجان قهوة

8 a loaf of bread



رغيف خبز

### B Listen and repeat

استمع وردد.

How much water did she have ?

She had one bottle of water.

How many bottles of water did she have ?

She had three bottles of water.



# Language Focus



تعليم وتعلم

## 1 Countable nouns

### ١- الأسماء المعدودة

هي الأسماء التي تُعد ولها مفرد وجمع :

مفرد



a cat

cats

جمع



a pen

pens



## 2 Uncountable nouns

### ٢- الأسماء غير المعدودة

هي الأسماء التي لا تُعد وإذا أردنا أن نحدد كميتها فإننا نستخدم :

أدوات التجزئة :

أداة التجزئة

اسم لا يعد

اسم يعد



a bottle of

+



water

=



a bottle of water



a slice of  
شريحة من

- roast beef
- roast turkey



a loaf of  
رغيف من

bread



a can of  
علبة صفيح من

lemonade



a piece of  
قطعة من

apple pie



a bottle of  
زجاجة من

- water
- milk



a glass of  
كوب من

- water
- milk
- orange juice



a cup of  
فنجان من

- tea
- coffee



a bowl of  
سلطانية من

- chicken soup
- fruit salad



### 3 How many ... ؟

٣- كم عدد ... ؟

نستخدم للسؤال عن شيء يُعد ويأتي بعدها اسم (جمع) يُعد.

How many + countable noun اسم جمع يعد

ex. How many pieces of apple pie did they have ?

They had four pieces of apple pie.





**! لاحظ** تغيير الفعل (have) عند الإجابة إلى (had) لأن صيغة الإستفهام في زمن الماضي البسيط لوجود (did).

ex. How many cups of coffee did she have ?  
She had two cups of coffee.



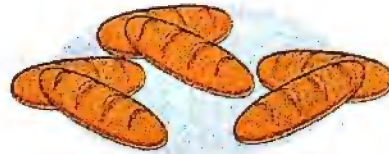
#### 4 How much ...?

ع- كم كمية ...?

تستخدم للسؤال عن الكمية ويأتي بعدها اسم (مفرد) لا يعد.

**How much + uncountable noun** باقى السؤال + اسم مفرد لا يعد

ex. How much bread did he have ?  
He had six loaves of bread.



### Remember WB Page 9



Future with "going to" المستقبل باستخدام "going to"

#### Formation :

I	→	am	} going to + مصدر الفعل inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	→	is	
You / They / We / اسم جمع	→	are	



### Examples:

I'm going to have three bowls of fruit salad.



She's going to have one bottle of water.



They're going to have four glasses of orange juice.



## Exercise on Language Focus

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She had a \_\_\_\_\_ of bread.  
a. loaf                      b. glass                      c. bottle                      d. bowl
2. ~~XXX~~ She's \_\_\_\_\_ to have three slices of roast turkey.  
a. goes                      b. going                      c. went                      d. go
3. I will take a \_\_\_\_\_ of apple pie. (Matrouh - Sima 2018)  
a. cup                      b. glass                      c. piece                      d. bottle
4. He had a \_\_\_\_\_ of chicken soup.  
a. piece                      b. bowl                      c. loaf                      d. bottle
5. They had three \_\_\_\_\_ of roast beef.  
a. cans                      b. bottles                      c. slices                      d. cups  
(Galyoubia - Shubra El Khayma 2019)
6. How \_\_\_\_\_ bowls of chicken soup did she have?  
a. old                      b. much                      c. many                      d. often
7. I'll have a \_\_\_\_\_ of coffee, please. (المتنوع مجمع أسبوع ٢٠٢١)  
a. cup                      b. can                      c. bowl                      d. bottle
8. How \_\_\_\_\_ fruit salad did you have?  
a. much                      b. tall                      c. high                      d. long



**C** Look at page (8). Listen and point.

انظر إلى الصورة في كتاب الطالب صفحة (٨) ثم استمع واشر.

**Practice Time**

**A** Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

How much bread did he have ? He had six loaves of bread.

1 How many pieces of apple pie did they have ?

They had four pieces of apple pie.



2 How many bowls of chicken soup did she have ?



3 How much lemonade did you have ?

We had two cans of lemonade.



4 She had two slices of roast beef.





5 How many cups of coffee did she have ?

She had one cup of coffee.

cups of coffee / she ?  
one



orange juice / you ?  
two glasses



6 I had two glasses of orange juice.

fruit salad / you ?  
one bowl



7 How much fruit salad did you have ?

slices of turkey / he ?  
four



8 He had four slices of turkey.

**B** Look at page (8). Practise with a partner .

نظر إلى صفحة (٨) كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

### Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع اختبار الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالمنهج.







## General

# Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How ..... water did you have ? (امتحان مجمع الاسكندرية ٢٠٢١)  
a. much                      b. tall                      c. long                      d. many

2. I'll take a ..... of apple pie.  
(Old Cairo 2020 / Port Said 2020)  
a. cup                      b. glass                      c. bottle                      d. piece

3. They had two ..... of bread.  
(Galyoubia - Obour 2020)  
a. cans                      b. slices                      c. loaves                      d. cups

4. How ..... cups of coffee do you have ?  
(Old Cairo 2020)  
a. is                      b. much                      c. many                      d. often

5. I had a loaf ..... bread.  
a. of                      b. from                      c. by                      d. in

6. I will take a ..... of roast turkey.  
a. cup                      b. glass                      c. slice                      d. can

7. **SB** How much fruit salad did you ..... ?  
a. sound                      b. have                      c. drink                      d. watch

8. **SB** ..... roast beef did you have ?  
a. How                      b. How many                      c. How much                      d. How often

### 2 **SB** Read the passage and answer the questions:

Kareem and Maha had a nice day. They went to the restaurant. Maha had a bowl of soup, spaghetti and meatballs and two glasses of orange juice. Kareem had two loaves of bread, three slices of pizza and a can of lemonade. Kareem and Maha love this restaurant because their food is the best in town. They usually go to this restaurant on Fridays.



## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kareem and Maha had a nice .....  
a. year                      b. day                      c. week                      d. month
2. Maha had a ..... of soup.  
a. slice                      b. loaf                      c. bowl                      d. can

## B. Answer the following questions:

3. How much lemonade did Kareem have ?  
.....
4. Where did Kareem and Maha go ?  
.....

## 3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. bowl - cup - apple - glass (Gharbia - Tanta 2020) (.....)
2. pie - How much - How many - How old (.....)
3. a can of - rice - a bottle of - a cup of (.....)
4. coffee - water - salad - tea (Fayoum - Itsa 2020) (.....)
5. turkey - hot dog - cup - roast beef (.....)

## 4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. bottles of - have - How many - water - she - did ? (Cairo - Mataria 2020)  
.....
2. He - a - lemonade - can of - had. (Cairo - Al Khalifa 2020)  
.....

## 5 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. did Kareem and Ahmed drink coffee  
.....
2. How much bread did Ayman and adel have  
.....



# Reading & Your Time

BR pages 116-12 WR pages 116-12

## Key Vocabulary

italian	(إيطالي) italy	real	حقيقي
owner	owner	the best	الأفضل
price	price / cost	chef	المطبخ / الطبخ
serve	serve		

## Notes

- Italian (إيطالي) (capital) (إيطالي) (إيطالي) (إيطالي)
- The restaurant serves breakfast. (المطبخ يقدم الإفطار) (serve) (يخدم) (يخدم) (يخدم)
- (chef) (المطبخ) (المطبخ) (المطبخ) (المطبخ) (المطبخ) (المطبخ) (المطبخ)

## Active Vocabulary

new	جديد	address	عنوان
grandpa	جد	street	شارع
last	الماضي / الأخير	kids	أطفال
downtown	وسط المدينة	bakery	مخبز
May	شهر مايو	Wednesday	الجمعة
town	مدينة (صغيرة)	breakfast	الإفطار
here	هنا	lunch	الغداء
clean	نظيف / ينظف	dinner	العشاء
good	جيد		

## Notes

- in town - in downtown - in Cairo (في المدينة / في وسط المدينة / في القاهرة)
- on 5<sup>th</sup> May - on May 5<sup>th</sup> 2018 (في 5 مايو / في 5 مايو 2018)
- in May - in 2018 (في مايو / في 2018)
- Grandpa Ali's restaurant (مطبخ جدي علي)



Conjugation of verbs						تصريف الأفعال	
Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
open	يفتح	opened		bring	يحضر	brought	
own	يمتلك	owned		say	يقول	said	
serve	يقدم طعام	served					

### New places & people

Italian restaurant  
big mama = grandmother  
grandpa = grandfather

أماكن وأشخاص جدد

مطعم إيطالي  
الجدّة  
الجد

## Reading Time

### Grandpa Ali's Restaurant Opens

SB page 11

#### Introduction : مقدمة

"Grandpa Ali's Restaurant Opens" is a passage from a newspaper about the opening of Grandpa Ali's Restaurant and the opinions of people about it.

"إفتتاح مطعم الجد على" هي فقرة من جريدة عن إفتتاح مطعم "الجد على" وآراء الناس فيه.

#### Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. Grandpa Ali's is a new Italian restaurant in downtown Cairo.  
١. «الجد على» مطعم إيطالي جديد في وسط مدينة القاهرة.
2. The real Grandpa Ali is the owner's grandfather and the chef at the restaurant.  
٢. الجد على الحقيقي هو جد المالك ورئيس الطهاة في المطعم.
3. Kids under five eat free.  
٣. الأطفال دون سن الخمس سنوات يأكلون بالمجان.
4. Grandpa Ali's restaurant is clean and the prices are good.  
٤. مطعم الجد على نظيف والأسعار جيدة.



**A Listen and read along.**

**Grandpa Ali's Restaurant Opens**

**by Adel Ibrahim**

Grandpa Ali's is a new Italian restaurant<sup>(1)</sup> in downtown Cairo. It opened on May 5<sup>th</sup>. Who is Grandpa Ali? Is he the owner<sup>(2)</sup>? No! The real Grandpa Ali is the owner's grandfather and the chef<sup>(3)</sup> at the restaurant.



Last Saturday, Laila Abdo and her friend Diana Smith had lunch at Grandpa Ali's. "Their pizza is the best pizza in town," Laila said. Diana said, "I'm going to bring<sup>(4)</sup> my children here. Kids<sup>(5)</sup> under five eat free<sup>(6)</sup>."

Grandpa Ali's is clean and the prices<sup>(7)</sup> are good. The address<sup>(8)</sup> is 12 Al Ahram Street. They're open daily<sup>(9)</sup> from 11:00 a.m. to 10:00 p.m. They serve<sup>(10)</sup> lunch and dinner.

**Check Vocabulary**

- (1) مطعم
- (2) مالك
- (3) رئيس الطهاة
- (4) يحضر
- (5) أطفال
- (6) مجاني
- (7) سعر / ثمن
- (8) عنوان
- (9) يومياً
- (10) يقدم طعام

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

● Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **SB** Grandpa Ali is the ..... at the restaurant.  
a. chef                      b. teacher                      c. doctor                      d. farmer
2. I'm going to ..... my children here tomorrow.  
a. play                      b. give                      c. open                      d. bring
3. **SB** Kids under five eat for .....  
a. quick                      b. best                      c. sad                      d. free

(Souhag 2018)



4. This restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ good lunch and dinner.  
a. serves      b. eats      c. opens      d. plays
5. What's your \_\_\_\_\_? I live at 12 Nawah Street, Giza.  
a. dress      b. address      c. name      d. job
6. The shop is open \_\_\_\_\_ from 11:00 a.m. to 10:00 p.m.  
a. day      b. days      c. daily      d. a day
7. A chef is a person who \_\_\_\_\_ food at a restaurant.  
a. cooks      b. plays      c. eats      d. orders
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ of this sandwich is good.  
a. price      b. prize      c. street      d. ice

**B Listen and circle True or False.**

أصغ (False) أو (True) حول دائرة

1. Grandpa Ali's is a bakery. True False
2. Laila Abdo said, "Their pasta is the best pasta in town." True False
3. Kids under five eat free. True False
4. Grandpa Ali's serves breakfast and lunch. True False

**C Read the question. Write the answer.**

اقرأ السؤال. اكتب الإجابة.

1. What is the name of the restaurant?  
The name of the restaurant is Grandpa Ali's.
2. Where is Grandpa Ali's?
3. Who is Grandpa Ali's?
4. When is Grandpa Ali's open?



**Big Mama's Restaurant Opens**

WB page 11

**Introduction : مقدمة**

"Big Mama's Restaurant Opens" is a passage from a newspaper about the opening of Big Mama's Restaurant and the opinions of people about it.

**افتتاح مطعم "الجدة" البج ماما** هي لقطة من جريدة عن افتتاح مطعم (الجدة) البج ماما وآراء الناس فيه.

**Main Points : نقاط رئيسية**

1. Big Mama's is a new Italian restaurant in Cairo.  
١. مطعم الجدة « البج ماما » مطعم إيطالي جديد في مدينة القاهرة.
  2. It opened on Wednesday.  
٢. تم افتتاح مطعم الجدة في يوم الأربعاء.
  3. Big Mama is the owner. She's the chef, too.  
٣. بيج ماما (الجدة) هي المالك ورئيسة الطهاة أيضًا.
  4. Kids under six eat free.  
٤. الأطفال دون سن السادسة يأكلون بالمجان.
- اقرأ القطعة في صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

**Your Time****A Listen and answer the questions.**

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. How many glasses of orange juice can you drink ?

.....

2. How many slices of roast beef can you eat ?

.....

3. How much lemonade can you drink ?

.....

4. How much fruit salad can you eat ?

.....



**(B) Ask your classmates. Write their names and circle Yes or No.**

اسأل أصدقائك حول الأطعمة الموجودة في الجدول ثم اكتب أسمائهم وضع دائرة حول Yes أو No.

\* Do you want a slice of roast beef for dinner ?

Food	Name	Yes / No	
1. a slice of roast beef	Rodina	Yes	No
2. a bowl of fruit salad	Roqla	Yes	No
3. a piece of apple pie		Yes	No
4. a bowl of soup		Yes	No

**(C) Review. Read and write the answers.**

اقرأ واكتب إجابتك على الأسئلة من خلال معرفتك.

1. Did you have a piece of apple pie for breakfast today ?

2. Do you like bread ?

3. What's your favourite food ?

4. Did you have a glass of milk this morning ?



**Spotlight**

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

أهم الجمل التي وردت في درسي الـ (READING & YOUR TIME)

1. Grandpa Ali's is a new Italian restaurant in downtown Cairo.
2. Kids under five eat free.
3. The restaurant is clean and the prices are good.
4. The restaurant serves breakfast and lunch.
5. Did you have a piece of apple pie for breakfast today ?





## General

# Exercises

Reading & Your Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Listen and complete: نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب استمع إلى معامك واكمل.

Ahmed: Where did you have lunch yesterday ?

Hany : I had lunch at a (1) ..... Italian restaurant.

Ahmed: (2) ..... Is it ?

Hany : It's in (3) .....

Ahmed: What does it (4) ..... ?

Hany : It serves lunch and dinner.

### 2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. serve - open - bring - bread ( ..... )
2. town - boy - girl - friend ( ..... )
3. waiter - chef - teacher - price ( ..... )
4. rice - bread - beef - restaurant ( ..... )
5. good - clean - pizza - free ( ..... )

### 3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

There is a new restaurant in our town. It's across from the bank. My friend and I had lunch in restaurant. We had spaghetti and meatballs. The food was delicious. The restaurant is clean and tidy مُنظَّم. The prices are good. Children under five are free. I'm going to bring my sister to the restaurant next Friday.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

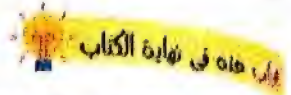
1. A new ..... is open in the town.  
a. bank                      b. restaurant                      c. hotel                      d. library
2. They had ..... there.  
a. lunch                      b. breakfast                      c. dinner                      d. snack



**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Where is the new restaurant ?

4. How much does it cost for children under five ? (Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)

**4 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:**

Write an email to your friend Nadia telling her about a new Italian restaurant in Cairo. Your name is Salma and your email address is salma@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nadia@gmail.com.

(Dakahlia - East Mansoura 2020)

To : .....  
 From : .....  
 Subject : .....

**5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**1. opened - on - May - It - 5<sup>th</sup> .2. SB is - When - open - Ali's - Grandpa ?**6 Punctuate the following sentences:**

1. where did you go last Friday, Adel

(South Sinai 2017)

2. Grandpa Ali is the owner s grandfather





# How to write

كيف نكتب

## Unit 2

### Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تعمل على إسترجاع المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

1. How much bread did he have ?  
- He had six loaves of bread.
2. How many pieces of apple pie did they have ?  
- They had four pieces of apple pie.

### Step 2 Word Practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• Choose and write the word : اختر وأكتب الكلمة

juice - soup - fruit



1. How much ..... salad did he have ?



2. I had a glass of orange .....

### Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• Choose and write the word :

long - many - much

1. How ..... water did he have ?  
- He had a bottle of water.
2. How ..... cups of coffee did you have?  
- I had two cups of coffee.



### Step 4 Your idea web

الخطوة الرابعة: شبكة أفكار خاصة بالكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به (تكوين ذهن) باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي درسها.

• Choose and complete the idea web.

soup - loaves - can - did

of bread did  
you have ?

How  
many

bottles of water  
you have?

a of lemonade.

I had

two bowls of chicken

### Step 5 Your writing

الخطوة الخامسة: كتابة موضوعك.

بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادراً على كتابة موضوع إنشائي أو بريد إلكتروني.

• Read, cut and stick.

"An Italian restaurant"

"My favourite food"

Cut & Paste here  
from page 293

Cut & Paste here  
from page 293

#### Writing checklist

- ☐ 1. My sentences begin with a capital letter.
- ☐ 2. My sentences end with a full stop.
- ☐ 3. My words are in the correct order.





تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. will - have - I - steak - a.
2. a cup - had - **Heba** - coffee - of.

فاصل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1	will have	
2		

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. **Don't** - too - much - coffee - drink.
2. potato - a baked - **Give** - me - , please.

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2		

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. did - have - **How much** - he - water ?
2. the - is - **When** - open - restaurant ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة ؟
1	did			
2		the restaurant		

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. you - to - **Are** - order - ready ?
2. you - want - **Do** - watch - a film - to ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة ؟
1			
2			





# Test your skills

## Unit 2

If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.  
 إذا حصلت على ● غير جيد  
 تحتاج أن تراجع الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

### 1 Listening skill

Listen to the conversation.  
 Listen and tick (✓).

استمع إلى المحادثة من الصفحة التالية. استمع وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Are you ready to order?  
☐ Medium, please. And a baked potato.  
☐ I think so. I'll have a steak.

### 2 Reading skill

Read and tick (✓).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

2. Which word goes in the sentence?  
 He had a \_\_\_\_\_ of chicken soup.  
☐ bowl  
☐ piece

### 3 Writing skill

3. Write three sentences about an Italian restaurant.

اكتب ثلاث جمل عن المطعم الإيطالي.

---



---



---

### My Spelling Test

Look and write.

1. \_\_\_\_\_



2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_



Self evaluation

التقييم الذاتي

My work in Unit is

● ممتاز

● جيد جداً

● جيد

● غير جيد





## 1. Conversation

Waitress : Hello. Are you ready to order ?

Woman : I think so. I'll have a steak.

Waitress : Rare, medium or well done ?

Woman : Medium, please. And a baked potato.

Waitress : How about a salad ?

Woman : Sounds good.

Man : What's today's special ?

Waitress : Spaghetti and meatballs.

Man : Good! I'm in the mood for spaghetti. I'll have that.

Waitress : Here you are.

Man : Thanks. It looks delicious.

## 2. Vocabulary

water  
coffee  
fruit salad  
lemonade  
roast beef  
roast turkey  
chicken soup  
apple pie  
orange juice  
bread

\* Food and drink quantities

كميات الطعام والشراب

\* a bottle of milk / water

زجاجة من (الحليب / مياه)

\* a can of lemonade

علبة مشروب من (عصير الليمون)

\* a slice of turkey

شريحة من (لحم تركيا)

\* a piece of apple pie

قطعة من (عطيرة التفاح)

\* a bowl of chicken soup

سلطانية من (شوربة الدجاج)

\* a glass of orange juice

كوب من (عصير البرتقال)

\* a cup of coffee

شعير من (القهوة)

\* a loaf of bread

خبز من (الخبز)

## Review on Unit 2



Workbook On Word Time page 8

A. What did they eat and drink? Look and write:  
ماذا أكلوا وشربوا؟ انظر واكتب



1. She ate roast beef. She drank lemonade.
2. She ate apple pie. She drank water.
3. He ate fruit salad. He drank orange juice.
4. He ate chicken soup. He drank coffee.

B. Look at the chart. Answer the questions:

انظر إلى الرسم التوضيحي وأجب عن الأسئلة:

✓ = Yes x = No				
Mona	✓	x	✓	x
Kareem	x	✓	x	✓
Ali and Basma	x	x	✓	✓

1. Did Kareem drink coffee? No, he didn't.
2. Did Ali and Basma eat bread? Yes, they did.

Workbook On Conversation Time page 7

A. Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:  
أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. Are order ready . Hello you ? to  
Hello. Are you ready to order ?
2. so I'll . a have I steak . think  
I think so. I'll have a steak.
3. How about ? salad a  
How about a salad ?
4. good ? special today's Sounds . What's  
Sounds good. What's today's special ?
5. Spaghetti and . meatballs  
Spaghetti and meatballs.

B. Look at A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

a, b, c or d واختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أ، ب، ج، د:

1. What will the man have ?  
a. soup and salad  
b. steak and salad  
c. salad and sandwich  
d. soup and sandwich
2. What's today's special ?  
a. meatballs  
b. spaghetti and meatballs  
c. steak  
d. rice
3. Does the man want a salad ?  
a. Yes  
b. No



**A. Read and write:**

اقرأ واكتب :

1. a bottle / two bottles
2. a can / four cans
3. a slice / three slices
4. a piece / two pieces
5. a bowl / six bowls
6. a cup / seven cups
7. a glass / two glasses
8. a loaf / three loaves

**B. Read and write:**

اقرأ واكتب :



1. They're going to have four glasses of orange juice.
2. He's going to have three bowls of fruit salad.
3. She's going to have three slices of roast turkey.
4. She's going to have one bottle of water.

**C. Write the questions and answers :**

اكتب الأسئلة والإجابات :

1. How many glasses of orange juice did Samir have ?  
He had five glasses of orange juice.
2. How much chicken soup did Amira have ?  
She had three bowls of chicken soup.



**A. Look at the chart. Answer the questions:**

انظر إلى الرسم التوضيحي وادب عن الأسئلة :

Wael			
Ola			

1. How much water did Ola have ?  
Ola had five bottles of water.
2. How much coffee did Ola have ?  
She had three cups of coffee.
3. How much lemonade did Wael have ?  
He had two cans of lemonade.
4. How much turkey did Wael have ?  
He had six slices of turkey.
5. How much cake did Ola and Wael have ?  
They had six pieces of cake.

**B. Read and write:**

اقرأ واكتب :

1. How much lemonade did he have ?  
He had two cans of lemonade.
2. How much orange juice did they have ?  
They had one glass of orange juice.
3. How many bowls of fruit salad did you have ?  
I had one bowl of fruit salad.
4. How many bottles of water did you have ?  
We had two bottles of water.





Workbook 2

A. Read the text and answer the questions.

1. What is the main purpose of the text?  
2. What are the main points of the text?  
3. What are the main arguments of the text?

B. Read the text and answer the questions.

1. What is the main purpose of the text?  
2. What are the main points of the text?  
3. What are the main arguments of the text?

C. Read the text and answer the questions.

Workbook 2

A. Read the text and answer the questions.

1. What is the main purpose of the text?  
2. What are the main points of the text?  
3. What are the main arguments of the text?

B. Read the text and answer the questions.

1. What is the main purpose of the text?  
2. What are the main points of the text?  
3. What are the main arguments of the text?

C. Read the text and answer the questions.

1. What is the main purpose of the text?  
2. What are the main points of the text?  
3. What are the main arguments of the text?



# Exam Language Bank

بنك لغوي لامتحان في كل وحدة والتي تستخدم في الامتحان (الامتحان - 2020)

unit  
2

## 1. Vocabulary

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

(الامتحان - 2020 - امتحان مجمع الجبل - برانچ 2020)

mood	الحالة المزاجية	water	ماء
restaurant	مطعم	Italian	إيطالي
menu	قائمة الطعام	price	سعر / ثمن
roast beef	لحم بقري مشوي	serve	يقدم (الخدمة)
bread	خبز	chef	طباخ
lemonade	عصير ليمون	open	يفتح
chicken soup	شوربة دجاج	owner	مالك

## 2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

(الامتحان - 2020 - امتحان مجمع الجبل - برانچ 2020)

1. I'm going to<sup>(1)</sup> have three bowls of fruit salad.
2. They had four pieces<sup>(2)</sup> of apple pie.
3. How many<sup>(3)</sup> pieces of apple pie did they have ?
4. How much<sup>(4)</sup> bread did he have ?

### Check Language

- الجملة الأخيرة في زمن المستقبل باستخدام going to (1)
- أحد أدوات التدرج تستخدم عند السؤال عن عدد (2)
- أحد الأسئلة التي تُعد باستخدام عند السؤال عن الكمية (3)
- أحد الأسئلة التي تُعد باستخدام عند السؤال عن الكمية (4)

## 3. Language Functions

وظائف لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

(الامتحان - مصر القديمة - 2020)

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• Are you ready to order ?	• I think so. I'll have a steak.
• How about a salad ?	• Sounds good.
• What's today's special ?	• Spaghetti and meatballs.





# Test 3 on Unit 2

• Understand

• Apply

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations  
 اجمع على الوحدة من الامتحانات العامة والديريات

## A Listening

### 1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى حوارك واطع دائرة

1. a. Steak and salad.  
b. Rice and meatballs.
2. a. Two bottles.  
b. Two cups.
3. a. Do you like fish?  
b. Do you like meat?
4. a. How much cake did they have?  
b. How much lemonade did they have?

### 2 Listen and complete :

Ali : Hello. Are you ready to order?

Ahmed : I (1) ..... so.

Ali : How about (2) ..... ?

Ahmed : Sounds good. What's today's (3) ..... ?

Ali : Chicken and spaghetti.

Ahmed : Good! I'm in the (4) ..... for spaghetti.

## B Reading

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I had one ..... of bread.

a. cup

b. bottle

c. loaf

d. can

2. What's today's ..... ? - Spaghetti and meatballs.

a. time

b. place

c. colour

d. special



3. Ahmed is the ..... at the restaurant. He cooks well.  
(Menofia 2015)  
a. driver                      b. waiter                      c. farmer                      d. chef
4. How ..... water did he have ?  
(Giza - Badrasheen 2018)  
a. much                      b. many                      c. often                      d. long
5. Did you have a glass ..... orange juice this morning ?  
(Menia 2016)  
a. in                      b. of                      c. for                      d. from
6. She is ..... have two cans of lemonade.  
(Giza 2018)  
a. go                      b. going to                      c. went                      d. going
7. .... cans of lemonade did she have ?  
(Suez 2015)  
a. How                      b. Where                      c. How much                      d. How many
8. Do you want the steak rare, ..... or well done ?  
(Alexandria 2014)  
a. high                      b. medium                      c. large                      d. small

**4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

1. lemonade - roast beef - soup - water (Port Said 2020) ( ..... )
2. ready - free - today - delicious (Alexandria 2020) ( ..... )
3. bread - steak - meat - help (Menofia - Shebeen El-Kom 2018) ( ..... )
4. chef - eat - play - swim (Qena 2015) ( ..... )
5. a slice of - pizza - a piece of - a kilo of (Sharkia 2015) ( ..... )

**5 Read the passage and answer the questions:**

Last Friday, Tamer, his mother and his sister Heba went out to have dinner in Ali Baba's Restaurant. Tamer ordered pizza. His mother ordered roast beef. Heba ordered baked potato and meatballs.

People like to have food in Ali Baba's because the foods are delicious and the prices are good. Ali Baba's Restaurant is open daily from 11 : 00 a.m to 10 : 00 p.m.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Heba ordered ..... and meatballs .  
a. pizza                      b. baked potato                      c. roast beef                      d. fish



2. The restaurant is open daily from 11 : 00 a.m. to  
a. 7 : 00      b. 8 : 00      c. 9 : 00      d. 10 : 00

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Where did Tamer have dinner last Friday ?

4. Why do people like to have the food in Ali Baba's restaurant ?

**C Writing**

**6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :**

Write an email to your friend Adham to tell him about your daily breakfast. Your name is Adel. Your email address is adel@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is adham@yahoo.com.

To : \_\_\_\_\_  
From : \_\_\_\_\_  
Subject : \_\_\_\_\_

**7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences.**

1. do - sugar - How - you - much - have ?

(Kafr El-Sheikh 2000)

2. going - soup - I'm - chicken - to have.

(Gharbia - Tanta 2000)

**8 Punctuate the following sentences:**

1. Did ali and ahmed have a piece of cake ?

(Beni Suef 2001)

2. I'll have soup and salad

(Alexandria 2002)





# Test 4 on Unit 2



• Understand

• Apply

• Create

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً ولحصولك

تلميح

## A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معامك وضع دائرة. نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. a. He had six loaves of bread.  
b. He had two loaves of bread.
2. a. Thanks. I'll have meat and rice.  
b. I think so. I'll have a steak.
3. a. How many cups of coffee do you have ?  
b. How many glasses of orange juice do you have ?
4. a. Are you ready to order ?  
b. What's today's special ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معامك واكمل

Waiter : May I take your order now ?

Ayman : I'd like an (1) ..... pie, please.

Waiter : Would you like something to (2) ..... ?

Ayman : Some (3) ..... , please.

Waiter : How do you (4) ..... your tea ?

Ayman : Without sugar.

## B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. SB Grandpa Ali's is open daily ..... 11:00 a.m. to 10:00 p.m.  
a. across from      b. under      c. on      d. from
2. He had a ..... of lemonade.  
a. slice      b. can      c. box      d. loaf



3. At this restaurant, children under five eat .....  
a. free                      b. bee                      c. three                      d. tree
4. He ate a loaf of bread ..... breakfast.  
a. of                      b. on                      c. for                      d. at
5. My uncle is a good ..... He cooks well.  
a. doctor                      b. teacher                      c. chef                      d. receptionist
6. She likes to drink chicken .....  
a. pie                      b. turkey                      c. soup                      d. water
7. Farouk's New Italian restaurant is clean and the prices .....  
good.  
a. be                      b. are                      c. was                      d. is
8. How ..... fruit salad can you eat ?  
a. many                      b. much                      c. long                      d. often

**4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

1. juice - water - lemonade - apple pie ( ..... )
2. bread - roast beef - turkey - soda pop ( ..... )
3. eat - drink - orange - make ( ..... )
4. slice - man - loaf - bowl ( ..... )
5. bakery - restaurant - can - museum ( ..... )

**5 Read the passage and answer the questions:**

Big Adel's is a new Italian restaurant in Alexandria. It opened last month. Who is Big Adel? Big Adel is the owner. He's the chef at the restaurant, too!

On Friday, Ahmed and his friend Ramy ate dinner at Big Adel's. Ahmed said, "Big Adel's meatballs are the best meatballs in town." Ramy said, "I'm going to bring my sister here tomorrow. Kids under six eat free!"

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Big Adel's is the ..... of a new Italian restaurant.  
a. woman                      b. owner                      c. kid                      d. man



2. Big Adel's is a new Italian restaurant in  
 a. Cairo                      b. Aswan                      c. Alexandria                      d. Italy

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. When did Big Adel's open ?

4. Who eat free at Big Adel's ?

**C Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:**

"An Italian restaurant"

أكتب هذه في قاعة الكتاب

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

1. delicious - These - look - meatballs.

2. SB you - like - bread - Do ?

.....

.....

**8 Punctuate the following sentences:**

1. WB did Ali and Mona have any juice today

2. Grandpa ali s restaurant serves delicious food.

.....

.....





# Stop here!

## 1. Mini-test for Al-Azhar Students

الطلاب من المرحلة الابتدائية

### 1 Read and circle!

1. What's today's special?  
a. It looks delicious.      b. Spaghetti and meatballs.
2. Rare, medium or well done?  
a. Medium, please. And a baked potato.  
b. A steak and a baked potato.
3. I think so. I'll have a steak.  
a. Are you ready to order?      b. How about a salad?
4. They had four loaves of bread.  
a. How much fruit salad did you have?  
b. How much bread did they have?

### 2 Punctuate the following sentence:

what s your favourite food

## 2. Use your brain, think smart

استخدم عقلك وحاول اجاب

### • Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. going to - I'm - my sister - here - bring - tomorrow.  
.....
2. didn't - Ola - have - salad - fruit.  
.....





## Quiz 1 on Units 1 & 2

اختبر نفسك على الوحدات 1 و 2

يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لتقييم وتقييمه  
للإجابات الواردة في الوحدات السابقة

### Model A

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Was there a pavement \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel ?  
a. on                      b. under                      c. above                      d. in front of
2. Are you \_\_\_\_\_ to order ?  
a. hurry                      b. late                      c. ready                      d. good
3. We saw the Mummy \_\_\_\_\_ in the museum.  
a. towers                      b. schools                      c. parks                      d. rooms
4. My best \_\_\_\_\_ is vanilla.  
a. flavour                      b. dessert                      c. colour                      d. kind
5. This box is so heavy. I \_\_\_\_\_ carry it.  
a. doesn't                      b. can't                      c. isn't                      d. aren't



### Model B

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. How \_\_\_\_\_ a salad ?  
a. on                      b. about                      c. at                      d. in
2. Does the price \_\_\_\_\_ the delivery خدمة التوصيل ?  
a. include                      b. expect                      c. cook                      d. buy
3. How \_\_\_\_\_ slices of turkey did you have ?  
a. many                      b. much                      c. old                      d. often
4. \_\_\_\_\_ invented the sandwich ?  
a. Which                      b. What                      c. When                      d. Who
5. I'm in the \_\_\_\_\_ for spaghetti for lunch.  
a. look                      b. menu                      c. mood                      d. smell





# UNIT 3

## Daily Activities النشطة اليومية



نقطة (77) لتسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب  
نقطة (78) لتسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات  
يتم الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

### Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

#### Listening/Speaking

- shop for a pie at a bakery

- التسوق لشراء فطيرة من مغربية

- express activities in the past

- التعبير عن أنشطة باستخدام زمن الماضي

- identify speakers in a conversation

- التعرف على المتحدثين في المحادثة

#### Reading

- read a short story

- قراءة قصة قصيرة

#### Vocabulary

- daily activities

- تعلم المفردات الخاصة بالأنشطة اليومية

#### Grammar

- emphatic pronouns

- تعلم ضمائر التوكيد

by (myself, himself, herself, yourself, yourselves, themselves, ourselves)

- simple past, affirmative & negative statements

- تعلم زمن الماضي البسيط (الجملة الخبرية المبنية والمفعية)

### لا إلتقان الوحدة :

• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإلتقان الوحدة.

• كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة والأبحاث بنهاية الكتاب.  
Master your term داخل الكراسة التفاعلية.



# Conversation Time

88 page 13 WB page 13

## Key Vocabulary

daily activities	أنشطة يومية	fresh	طازج
What kind ...?	ما نوع ... ؟	too	جدا / أيضا
cherry	كرز	out of	استنفذ / نفذ
expensive	غال الثمن	ple	مظيرة

## Notes

1. What kinds of pies do you have? : نستخدم (kind) كاسم بمعنى (نوع) :  
She is kind. : نستخدم كلمة بمعنى (طيب / عطوف) :
2. It's too expensive. : إذا جاء بعد (too) صفة يكون معناها جدًا.  
3. أما إذا جاءت (too) في نهاية الجملة يكون معناها أيضًا ونضع قبلها (,) .
3. I like fish. I like meat ,too.

## Active Vocabulary

customer	زبون	peach	خوخ
How much ... ?	كم ثمن ... ؟	apple	تفاحة
pound	جنيه	nice	جميل
each	كل (على حدة)	chocolate chip cookies	رقائق البسكويت بالشيكولاتة
baker	خباز		
bakery	مخبز	lemon cookies	بسكويت بالليمون
today	اليوم	peanut butter	زبدة الفول السوداني
lemon	ليمون	piaster = piastre	قرش (عملة)

## Notes

1. each : كلمة (each) تعني كل (على حده)  
- They're 4 pounds each. - أي أن الفطيرة الواحدة تبلغ تكلفتها ٤ جنيهات.
2. all : كلمة (all) تعني (كل)  
اسم جمع → all  
- All pies cost 20 L.E. - أي أن كل الفطائر الموجودة تبلغ تكلفتها ٢٠ جنيه.



## Conjugation of verbs

المزاجات الأفعال

Irregular Verbs			أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع
can	يستطيع	could		get	يحصل على
take	يأخذ	took		have	يملك / يتناول
					got
					had

### Important expressions

عبارات هامة

1. That's too expensive.
2. Sorry.
3. We're out of .....
4. Oh!
5. Great!

1. هذا غالي الثمن جدًا (غالي جدًا لدرجة لا يمكن شراءه).
2. آسف.
3. ليس لدينا ... / استنفدنا ...
4. تستخدم للتعبير عن الإندهاش (أوه!).
5. عظيم / رائع!

### Exercise Vocabulary

- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. lemon - apple - water - peach

(Sharkia 2017 / El-Menshah - Souhag 2019) (.....)

2. juice - water - lemonade - pie

(Damietta 2014) (.....)

3. expensive - take - fresh - great

(.....)

4. peanut - chocolate - pound - cookie

(.....)

5. baker - waiter - customer - bakery

(.....)

### Daily Activities

أنشطة يومية

- Characters الشخصيات المحادثة

a customer

زبون



a baker

خباز

- Topic الموضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is at a **bakery**. A man wants to buy a pie.

تدور محادثة اليوم في **مخبز** حيث أن هناك رجلًا يريد أن يشتري فطيرة.



**A** Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.



**Baker** : Good morning.  
Can I help you ?

**الخباز** : صباح الخير. هل يمكنني مساعدتك ؟

**Customer** : Yes, please. What  
kinds of pies do you  
have today ?

**الزبون** : نعم من فضلك. ما أنواع الفطائر  
التي لديكم اليوم ؟

**Baker** : We have lemon,  
peach and apple.

**الخباز** : لدينا فطائر ليمون وخوخ وتفاح.

**Customer** : Do you have any  
cherry pies ?

**الزبون** : هل لديك أى فطائر بالكريز ؟

**Baker** : Sorry. We're out of  
cherry. But the apple  
pies are very nice.

**الخباز** : آسف. لقد نفذ ما لدينا من فطائر  
الكريز. لكن فطائر التفاح جيدة جدًا.

**Customer** : How much are they ?

**الزبون** : كم ثمنها ؟

**Baker** : They're ten pounds  
each.

**الخباز** : عشرة جنيهات للواحدة.

**Customer** : Oh, that's too  
expensive. How much  
are the peach pies ?

**الزبون** : ياه، إنها غالية جدًا. كم ثمن فطائر  
الخوخ ؟

**Baker** : They're five pounds  
each.

**الخباز** : خمسة جنيهات للواحدة.

**Customer** : Okay. I'll take one.

**الزبون** : حسنًا. سوف آخذ واحدة.

**Baker** : Great! I'll get  
a fresh pie for you.

**الخباز** : عظيم! سأحضر لك فطيرة طازجة.



# Language Functions

1



لنعرض المساعدة على شخص ما نستخدم :  
Can I help you ?

هل يمكنني مساعدتك ؟

عند السؤال عن نوع المنتج نستخدم :

- What kinds of (pies) do you have today ?

ما أنواع (الفطائر) التي لديكم اليوم ؟

2

• غالبًا نستخدم الضمير (we) بدلاً من (I) عندما نتحدث بالنيابة عن المكان الذي نعمل فيه :

- We have lemon, peach and apple.

- لدينا فطائر بالليمون والخوخ والتفاح.



3



للاستفسار عن وجود منتج معين نستخدم :

- Do you have any (cherry pies) ?

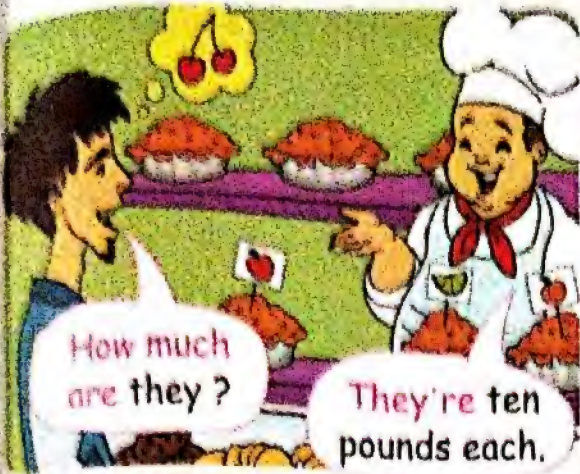
هل لديكم أى من (فطائر الكرز) ؟

عند الاعتذار لعدم وجود المنتج أو لنفاده نستخدم :

- Sorry. We're out of cherry.

- معذرة. لقد نفذ ما لدينا من فطائر الكرز.





4

- للسؤال عن ثمن شيء ما نستخدم :  
- How much ... ?  
- كم ثمن ... ؟
- وللرد نستخدم :  
- They're (ten pounds) each.  
- ثمن الواحدة عشرة جنيهات.

5

- نستخدم (Oh) للتعبير عن الإندھاش  
- Oh! That's too expensive.  
- أوه ! انه غالى الثمن جداً.
- too expensive  
- نستخدم للتعبير عن أن هذا  
الشيء غالى جداً لدرجة لايمكن  
الشخص من شراءه.



6

- نستخدم (Okay) للتعبير عن  
الموافقة على شيء ما.  
- Okay. I'll take one.  
- حسناً. سوف أخذ واحدة.
- نستخدم (مصدر الفعل + will + inf.)  
للتخاذ قرار سريع.  
- I'll take ...  
- I'll get ...



## B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة السابقة.





## General

# Exercises on Conversation Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى معلك واطع دائرة

يوض الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. a. We have lemon, peach and apple.  
b. We have cherry, apple and orange.

(Beni Suf 2018)

2. a. They are five pounds each.  
b. They are ten pounds each.

(Suez 2018)

3. a. Do you have any cherry pies ?  
b. Do you have any apple pies ?

(Assiut - Sedfa 2018 / Giza - Al Omraneyah 2018)

4. a. What kinds of juice do you have ?  
b. What kinds of pies do you have ?

(Cairo 2018)

### 2 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلك واكمل

Ahmed : Good morning. What kinds of pies do you have ?

Basem : We have lemon, (1) ..... and apple pies.

Ahmed : How (2) ..... are the apple pies ?

Basem : They're (3) ..... pounds each.

Ahmed : Okay. May I (4) ..... one ?

Basem : Great! I'll get you one apple pie.

(Menia 2015 / El Basateen and Dar El-Salam 2015)

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The car is very ..... It costs a lot of money.

(Cairo 2020 / Menia - Deir Mawas 2020)

- a. expensive      b. high      c. bad      d. cheap

2. The apple pies are ten pounds ..... (المتنزه ٢٠٢١) .

- a. one      b. each      c. some      d. once

3. I'll get a / an ..... pie for you. It's delicious.

- a. fat      b. bad      c. fresh      d. old



1. Does she have \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate chip cookies?  
a. any                      b. an                      c. each                      d. once
2. How \_\_\_\_\_ kinds of pies did you buy?  
a. long                      b. much                      c. many                      d. often
3. What \_\_\_\_\_ of pies do you have today?  
a. long                      b. colour                      c. kinds                      d. time
4. We can buy bread and cookies \_\_\_\_\_ the bakery.  
a. of                      b. on                      c. at                      d. next
5. \_\_\_\_\_ are the peach pies? - Five pounds each.  
a. How many                      b. What kind                      c. How long                      d. How much

**4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:**

"At the bakery"

عربي: حله في نهاية الكتاب

(New Cairo 2019)

**5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

1. of - soup - out - We - chicken - are. (Menofia - Shibin El Kom 2020)

2. pies - Does - apple - she - have? (Cairo - El Shrouk 2020)

**6 Punctuate the following sentences:**

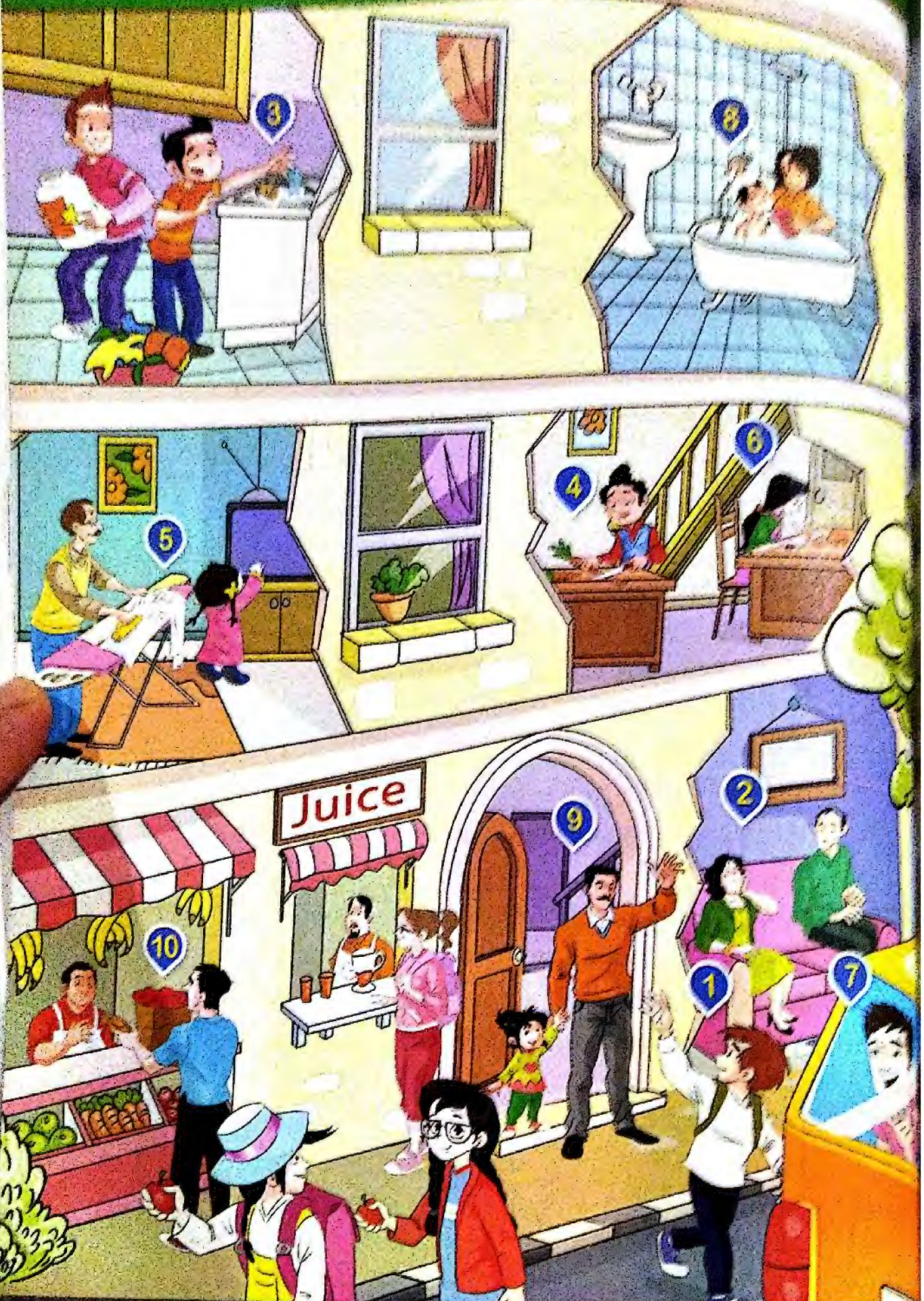
1. Can I have a chocolate cake please (Suez 2015)

2. I'll get a fresh pie for Adel



# Word Time

SB page 14 WB page 14





# HOUSEWORK AND ERRANDS

## HOUSEWORK

## HOUSEWORK

## HOUSEWORK

1. take a shower



أشعر (أشعر) أنا

2. go to the dentist



أذهب (أذهب) أنا

3. do the laundry



أغسل (أغسل) أنا

4. take a bath



أستحم (أستحم) أنا

5. iron a shirt



أغسل (أغسل) أنا

6. clean fruit



أغسل (أغسل) أنا

7. take a bus



أذهب (أذهب) أنا

8. wash my hair



أغسل (أغسل) أنا

9. stay home



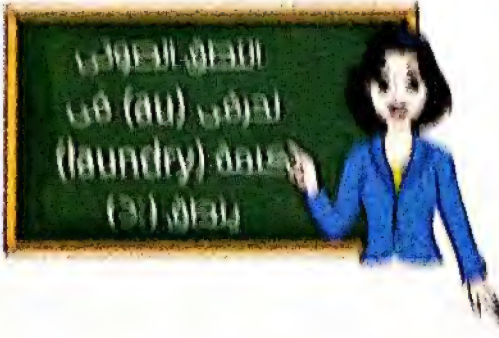
أبقى (أبقى) أنا

10. buy groceries



أشتري (أشتري) أنا

أغسل (أغسل) أنا  
أذهب (أذهب) أنا  
(laundry) أنا  
أغسل (أغسل) أنا






1. Apple  
 2. Apple  
 3. Apple  
 4. Apple  
 5. Apple  
 6. Apple  
 7. Apple  
 8. Apple  
 9. Apple  
 10. Apple  
 11. Apple  
 12. Apple  
 13. Apple  
 14. Apple  
 15. Apple  
 16. Apple  
 17. Apple  
 18. Apple  
 19. Apple  
 20. Apple  
 21. Apple  
 22. Apple  
 23. Apple  
 24. Apple  
 25. Apple  
 26. Apple  
 27. Apple  
 28. Apple  
 29. Apple  
 30. Apple  
 31. Apple  
 32. Apple  
 33. Apple  
 34. Apple  
 35. Apple  
 36. Apple  
 37. Apple  
 38. Apple  
 39. Apple  
 40. Apple  
 41. Apple  
 42. Apple  
 43. Apple  
 44. Apple  
 45. Apple  
 46. Apple  
 47. Apple  
 48. Apple  
 49. Apple  
 50. Apple  
 51. Apple  
 52. Apple  
 53. Apple  
 54. Apple  
 55. Apple  
 56. Apple  
 57. Apple  
 58. Apple  
 59. Apple  
 60. Apple  
 61. Apple  
 62. Apple  
 63. Apple  
 64. Apple  
 65. Apple  
 66. Apple  
 67. Apple  
 68. Apple  
 69. Apple  
 70. Apple  
 71. Apple  
 72. Apple  
 73. Apple  
 74. Apple  
 75. Apple  
 76. Apple  
 77. Apple  
 78. Apple  
 79. Apple  
 80. Apple  
 81. Apple  
 82. Apple  
 83. Apple  
 84. Apple  
 85. Apple  
 86. Apple  
 87. Apple  
 88. Apple  
 89. Apple  
 90. Apple  
 91. Apple  
 92. Apple  
 93. Apple  
 94. Apple  
 95. Apple  
 96. Apple  
 97. Apple  
 98. Apple  
 99. Apple  
 100. Apple

Call	Manager
Mr. J. H. H.	Shop Assistant
Frank H.	mine
John	grocer
And J. H.	grocer's
John H.	grocery (H)

# Introduction

... dan ...

(b) less than

Ex: Fady is taller than Omar.

11-24-11 10:47

Regular Verbs		Irregular Verbs	
Present	Past	Present	Past
walk	walked	go	went
iron	ironed	buy	bought
chop	chopped	know	knew
slice	sliced	take	took
stay	stayed	do	did
wash	washed		

1. on the pavement

المجلد ١٠

2. I don't know.

10/10/11

3. It's two pounds.



4. Here you are.

And in the end

5. You can have mine.

...to / ...to ...



**B** Point and say the words. انظر الى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة واذكرها.

**C** Listen and point. استمع وانظر الى المتحدثين.

Kareem : Was there a mouse beside that tree?

Friend : Where ?

Kareem : Beside that tree, on the pavement.

Friend : I don't know.



Girl : Hi, Mr Adam. How much is a medium apple juice ?

Shop assistant : It's two pounds.

Girl : Great! I'll take one, please.

Shop assistant : Here you are.



Mona : Look! My apple is bigger than your apple.

Friend : But I'm so hungry.

Mona : Here. You can have mine.

Friend : Thanks !



**Stop here!**



- اختبار مصغر للأزهر الشريف.  
- طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك



## Remember



WB page 14

I	am	
He - She - It	is	going to + Inf. (مصدر الفعل)
You - They - We	are	

- \* I'm going to take a bus at 7 : 10.
- \* He's going to iron a shirt at 12 : 15.
- \* They're going to buy groceries at 10 : 30.

\* تستخدم (am, is, are) مع الفعل (to + Inf.)  
\* تستخدم (am, is, are) مع الفعل (to + Inf.)  
\* تستخدم (am, is, are) مع الفعل (to + Inf.)

\* تستخدم (am, is, are) مع الفعل (to + Inf.)

I / you / we / they	like	(Inf.)
He / she / It	likes	to + مصدر الفعل

ex. She likes to iron a shirt.

\* تستخدم (like, likes) مع الفعل (to + Inf.)

I / you / we / they	don't	(Inf.)
He / she / It	doesn't	like to + مصدر الفعل

ex. She doesn't like to slice fruit.

## Writing Skills



★ اتقن مهارة الكتابة عن طريق :

- اجابة كل الموضوعات الإنشائية.
- **How to write** يمكنك من مهارة الكتابة بطريقة مبتكرة في نهاية كل وحدة.



# General Exercises on Word Time

1. Hobbies

2. Food

3. Places

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother stayed ☐ at home ☐ at his friend's house ☐ at his office ☐ at his work  
(2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
2. My mother ☐ the laundry ☐ the house ☐ the car ☐ the garden  
(2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
3. Please, ☐ these vegetables to make a salad ☐ to eat ☐ to drink ☐ to wash  
(2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
4. I am going to the ☐ supermarket ☐ dentist ☐ library ☐ school  
(2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
5. I am going to ☐ a bus to school at 7 a.m. ☐ a car ☐ a train ☐ a plane  
(2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
6. My apple is ☐ big ☐ bigger ☐ biggest ☐ the biggest  
(2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
7. Was there a mouse beside ☐ that ☐ these ☐ those ☐ there  
(2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
8. We should walk ☐ the pavement ☐ in ☐ on ☐ next ☐ under  
(2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)

## 2. Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. school - restaurant - library - coffee (2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
2. lived - walked - washed - took (2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
3. doctor - baker - grocer - school (2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
4. chop - behind - beside - above (2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)
5. tomatoes - potatoes - juice - beans (2010 / 2011 / 2012 / 2013)



### Read the passage and answer the questions

Ahmed is almost there with the family in morning. My mother always gets up early. She makes breakfast at seven o'clock. We usually have milk, chicken, jam and bread.

In the afternoon, my mother cooks lunch. I help her in the kitchen. I can chop vegetables, stir food and do the laundry. I go with her to the supermarket to buy groceries. I love my family very much.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed's mother makes \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning.  
a. dinner      b. snack      c. breakfast      d. lunch
2. Ahmed helps his mother in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. kitchen      b. school      c. office      d. library

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do they have for breakfast?
4. What can Ahmed do?

### 4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1. ~~is~~ there - a mouse - tree - that - Was - beside?
2. ~~is~~ a shirt - iron - she - doesn't - like to.

### 5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. I'll take one, please.
2. did Heba and redina take the bus?



# Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 15&16 WB pages 15&16

## Focus Time

**A** Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

1 by myself



2 by himself



3 by herself



4 by yourself



5 by yourselves



6 by themselves



7 by ourselves





تعريف الأفعال التالية :

walk → walked go → went do → did chop → chopped iron → ironed  
slice → sliced take → took wash → washed stay → stayed buy → bought

**B** Listen and repeat.

**Affirmative**  
I ironed a shirt by myself.

**Negative**  
I didn't iron a shirt by myself.

**Language Focus**



**1 Emphatic pronouns**

أ. ضمائر التوكيد

يُعاد ضمير التوكيد على المتكلم أو الفاعل في الجملة.

ex. I chopped the vegetables by **myself**.

يستخدم (ضمائر التوكيد) للتأكيد على أن الشخص أدى العمل بنفسه.

لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (by) قبل ضمير التوكيد.

لاحظ أن (ضمائر التأكيد) تأتي في نهاية الجملة.

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Emphatic pronouns ضمائر التوكيد	
I	by myself بنفسي (بمفردي)	
He	by himself بنفسه (بمفرده)	
She	by herself بنفسها (بمفردها)	



It	by itself بنفسه (بفردة) بنفسها (بفردتها) (غير عاقل)	
You (مفرد)	by yourself بنفسك (بفردك)	
You (جمع)	by yourselves بأنفسكم (بفردكم)	
We	by ourselves بأنفسنا (بفردنا)	
They	by themselves بأنفسهم (بفردهم)	

## 2 The Past Simple Tense

٢. زمن الماضي البسيط

### 1 Formation التكوين

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل كالتالي :

#### Regular verbs

(ed) أو (d) أو (ied) + الفعل المنتظم

ed

تضاف لمعظم  
الأفعال المنتظمة.

walk → walked

d

تضاف لمعظم الأفعال  
المنتهية بـ (e).

slice → sliced

ied

تضاف للأفعال المنتهية بـ (y)  
قبلها (حرف ساكن) بعد حذف (y).

study → studied

◀ لاحظ أن التصريف الثاني للفعل (play) هو (played)، لا يتم حذف (y) لأنها  
سبقته بحرف متحرك وليس ساكن.



## التصريف الثاني للفعل الغير منتظم Irregular verbs

buy	bought
get	got
take	took

التصريف الثاني للأفعال غير المنتظمة ليس له قاعدة ثابتة لذلك يحفظ كما هو.

### 2 Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي.

Key words	كلمات دالة
yesterday	أمس
last (week-month...)	الماضي
ago + فترة زمنية	منذ
once	ذات مرة
in the past	في الماضي
in + سنة ماضية	في عام
one day	ذات يوم

وجود هذه الكلمات في الجملة دليل على أن زمنها ماضى بسيط.

ex. I ironed my shirt yesterday.

### 3 Expressing activities in the past :

التعبير عن أنشطة في زمن «الماضي البسيط».

#### Affirmative

الإثبات

I  
you / we / They + التصريف الثاني للفعل + باقي الجملة  
He / she / It

ex. I sliced fruit by myself.

#### Negative

النفي

I  
you / we / They + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة  
He / she / It

ex. I didn't slice fruit by myself.



## Exercise on Language Focus

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He didn't drive a sports car by ..... (الامتحان مجمع الأقصر ٢٠٢١)  
a. himself      b. herself      c. myself      d. itself
2. Hani and I did the laundry by ..... (Gharbia - El Santaa 2019)  
a. herself      b. ourselves      c. themselves      d. himself
3. Yesterday, they ..... a bus by themselves.  
a. take      b. takes      c. took      d. taking
4. Hamed walked to school ..... himself.  
a. from      b. by      c. of      d. under
5. .... go to the dentist by ourselves. (Cairo - Helwan 2020)  
a. He      b. She      c. Me      d. We
6. They ..... football last Friday.  
a. playing      b. plays      c. played      d. play
7. I always do it by ..... (Kaf El-Sheikh 2017)  
a. himself      b. herself      c. myself      d. yourself
8. She chopped vegetables by ..... (Beni Suef 2018)  
a. yourself      b. herself      c. myself      d. himself
9. You didn't ..... your hair by yourself. (Cairo - Helwan 2020)  
a. washed      b. washing      c. wash      d. washes

### C Look at page (14). Listen and point.

انظر إلى الصورة في كتاب الطالب صفحة (١٤) ثم استمع وأشر.

- 1 She sliced fruit by herself.
- 2 She didn't wash her hair by herself.
- 3 They took a bus by themselves.



# Practice Time

**A** Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

أنا مشيت إلى المدرسة بمفدي.

You walked to school by yourselves.

1 I sliced fruit by myself.

I / slice fruit / myself



You / wash your hair / yourself

2 You didn't wash your hair by .....



He / buy groceries / himself

3 .....



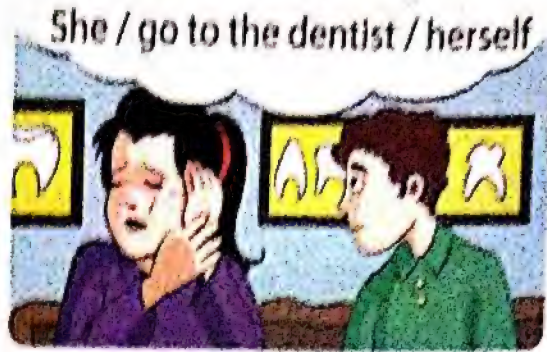
We / take a bus / ourselves

4 We took a bus by .....





5 She didn't go to the dentist  
by herself.



6 You / chop vegetables / yourself



7 They did the laundry by .....



8 She didn't stay home .....



**B** Look at page (14). Practise with a partner.

انظر الى الصورة صفحة (١٤) فى كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.





## General

# Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

**1** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We didn't go to the dentist ..... ourselves.  
a. from                      b. in                      c. by                      d. of
2. Where ..... she go yesterday ? *(Beheira - Rasheed 2019)*  
a. do                      b. did                      c. does                      d. doing
3. **SB** I ..... home by myself.  
a. took                      b. stayed                      c. did                      d. sliced
4. He ..... his hair by himself last week.  
a. washed                      b. chopped                      c. took                      d. stayed
5. She bought bread by ..... *(Beni Suef - Naser 2020)*  
a. himself                      b. herself                      c. myself                      d. itself
6. **WB** She didn't ..... groceries by herself.  
a. stay                      b. wash                      c. chop                      d. buy
7. Heba ..... her new dress.  
a. went                      b. did                      c. ironed                      d. sliced
8. I walked to school by ..... *(Dakahlia - Dekernes 2020)*  
a. himself                      b. myself                      c. yourselves                      d. ourselves

**2** Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. bought - listen - went - forgot *(Gharbia 2017)* ( ..... )
2. walk - stay - iron - pie ( ..... )
3. myself - herself - it - themselves *(Al-Azhar / Tanta 2016)* ( ..... )
4. teacher - doctor - slice - farmer  
*(Cairo - El-Basateen and El-Salam 2018)* ( ..... )
5. train - bus - hair - taxi *(Gharbia - East Tanta 2018)* ( ..... )



**3** Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Your holiday"

الرجاء كتابة فقرة من سبعة جملات

(Beni Suef 2019)

**4** Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. do - Did - himself - the laundry - he - by ? (Dakahlia - Manzala 2018)

2. myself - my - I - dress - by - Ironed.

(Giza 2017)

**5** Punctuate the following sentences:

1. No she didn t go to the dentist.

2. did Ayman and Samy slice fruit by themselves

**Quick Look**



راجع منهجك في ساعة واحدة

الرجاء البوستر من كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية



# Reading & Your Time

SB pages 17&18 WB pages 17&18

## Key Vocabulary

list	قائمة	groceries	قائمة
grocery list	قائمة البقالة	trolley	عربة يد لنقل الحقائق أو المشتريات
money	لقدود	basket	سلة
problem	مشكلة	checkout	مكان دفع الحساب
grocer	بقال	checkout line	طابور دفع الحساب

## Notes

1. نستخدم حرف الجر (in) بمعنى (في / داخل) مع كلمة (trolley), (basket).
2. التعبير عن الموافقة على شيء ما نستخدم:
  - I put the groceries in a trolley.
  - No problem. لا توجد مشكلة.

## Active Vocabulary

table	منضدة	pay for	يدفع لـ ...
line	صف/طابور	run back to	يعود مسرعاً إلى
go home	يذهب للمنزل	arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)
supermarket	متجر	by the door	بجانب الباب
forget	ينسى	dentist	طبيب أسنان
remember	يتذكر	then	ثم
for me	لأجلي	toothache	آلم أسنان
walk to	يمشي إلى	bookstore	مكتبة لبيع الكتب

## Notes

1. نستخدم (by) بمعنى (بجوار / بالقرب من) إذا جاء بعدها مكان.
  - by the door
  - by the window
2. نستخدم حرف الجر (to) بمعنى (إلى) مع:
  - يعود إلى - run back to
  - يذهب إلى - go to
  - يمشي إلى - walk to
- بينما لا نستخدم (to) قبل كلمة (home).
3. مكان كبير (دولة أو مدينة) + arrive in
4. مكان صغير (مدرسة - مستشفى) + arrive at
5. ينطق حرفي (ch) في كلمة (toothache) مثل صوت حرف (k).



Irregular Verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
put	يضع	put		get	يحصل على	got	
pay	يدفع	paid		forget	ينسى	forgot	
say	يقول	said		leave	يترك / يغادر	left	

### Note

- \* تستخدم (for) مع (pay) بمعنى (يدفع ثمنًا لشيء ما).  
- يدفع ثمن البقالة

## Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- He puts the groceries in the ..... (Alexandria 2020)  
a. pen                      b. trolley                      c. table                      d. book
- Adel went to the ..... to pay for the groceries.  
a. check in                      b. checkout                      c. list                      d. doctor
- Huda arrived ..... school at 8:00 a.m.  
a. at                      b. in                      c. on                      d. to
- Mona ran ..... to the supermarket.  
a. book                      b. back                      c. door                      d. go

## Reading Time

### Ramy Forgot !

SB page 17

#### Introduction : مقدمة

"Ramy Forgot!" is a passage about one of Ramy's daily activities. His mother asked him to go to the supermarket to buy groceries.

"رامي نسي" هي فقرة عن إحدى أنشطة رامي اليومية. طلبت منه والدته الذهاب إلى المتجر (السوبر ماركت) ليشتري البقالة.

#### Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

- Ramy's mother wanted him to go to the supermarket.  
١. أرادت والدته رامي منه أن يذهب إلى السوبر ماركت.
- Mum put a grocery list and some money on the table by the door.  
٢. وضعت الأم قائمة المشتريات وبعض المال على المنضدة بجوار الباب.
- Ramy went to the supermarket to buy groceries.  
٣. ذهب رامي إلى السوبر ماركت لشراء البقالة.



**A Listen and read along.**

**Ramy Forgot!**

"Ramy", said his mother, "Will you go to the supermarket <sup>(1)</sup> for me, please?" She put a grocery list <sup>(2)</sup> and some money on the table by the door.



"No problem <sup>(3)</sup>, Mum," said Ramy. Ramy arrived at <sup>(4)</sup> the supermarket. "Oh, no!",



Ramy said. "I forgot <sup>(5)</sup> the list!" He went home and got the list. Then he ran back to <sup>(6)</sup> the supermarket. Ramy put the groceries in the trolley <sup>(7)</sup>. Then he went to the checkout <sup>(8)</sup>.

"Oh, no!" he said. "I forgot the money!" He ran home, got the money, and ran back to the supermarket. Then he paid for <sup>(9)</sup> the groceries and went home.



"Hi, Ramy," said his mother. "Where are the groceries?"

"Oh, no!" he said. "I left them at the supermarket!"

**Check Vocabulary**

- (1) متجر
- (2) قائمة البقالة
- (3) لا توجد مشكلة
- (4) وصل إلى
- (5) نسي
- (6) جرى عائداً إلى
- (7) عربة تُجر باليد
- (8) مكان دفع الثمن
- (9) دفع ثمن له

**B Listen and circle True or False.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول (True) أو (False)

1. Ramy went to the supermarket with his mother.
2. Ramy ran to the bookstore.

True False

True False



3. Ramy forgot the money.

True False

4. Ramy didn't pay for the groceries.

True False

**C** Read the question. Write the answer. اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة

1. Where did Ramy go ?

2. Who wanted Ramy to go ?

3. What did Ramy leave at the supermarket ?

He left the groceries at the supermarket

4. Why did Ramy go back home many times ?

**Sally Remembered !**

WB page 17

**Introduction : مقدمة**

"Sally Remembered !" is a passage about one of Sally's daily activities. Her father asked her to go to the supermarket to buy groceries.

"سالى تذكرت" هي فقرة عن إحدى أنشطة سالى اليومية. والدها طلب منها الذهاب إلى المتجر لتشتري البقالة.

اقرأ النص في صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

**Your Time**

**A** Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. Did you do the laundry on Tuesday ?

2. Did you wash your hair this morning ?



3. Will you eat breakfast by yourself tomorrow?

4. Are you going to walk to school by yourself tomorrow?

5. Can you chop vegetables by yourself?

**B** Pair work. What can you do by yourself? Write. Then ask your partner.

ما يمكنك فعله بمفردك؟ اكتب. ثم اسأل شريكك.

You	Your Partner
1. I can do the laundry by myself.	1.
2.	2.
3.	3.
4.	4.

**C** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I'm going to the \_\_\_\_\_ as I have a toothache.

- a. dentist      b. supermarket      c. grocer      d. nurse

2. I stayed \_\_\_\_\_ on Friday as it was a holiday.

- a. park      b. office      c. work      d. home

3. I \_\_\_\_\_ going to wash my hair tomorrow.

- a. do      b. is      c. am      d. are

4. I \_\_\_\_\_ take the bus as I go on foot.

- a. do      b. don't      c. does      d. doesn't

5. I buy my things \_\_\_\_\_ myself.

- a. by      b. as      c. with      d. at





## General

# Exercises

Reading & Your Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one!

1. museum - hotel - restaurant - test (Mena - Belk Mawaz 2020) ( )
2. train - trolley - car - bus (Kaf El-Shiekh - Sidi Balim 2019) ( )
3. he - yourself - she - we (Cairo - West Cairo 2018) ( )
4. went - bought - play - said (Qena - Farshot 2020) ( )
5. Monday - Friday - Sally - Tuesday (Port Said - South 2018) ( )

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look at the grocery ..... to buy what you need.  
a. trolley      b. supermarket      c. list      d. checkout  
(Alexandria - Agami 2020)
2. She ..... groceries yesterday.  
a. buy      b. bought      c. buys      d. buying  
(Gharbia - Tanta 2020)
3. I'll ..... for the tickets.  
a. pays      b. paying      c. pay      d. paid  
(Suez 2014)
4. A supermarket is a big store where you can ..... groceries.  
a. buy      b. buying      c. bought      d. buys
5. He went to the ..... to pay money.  
a. list      b. door      c. trolley      d. checkout
6. A ..... is used for carrying things in a supermarket.  
a. trolley      b. car      c. taxi      d. bin  
(The Red Sea 2014)
7. Ali ran ..... to the supermarket because he forgot some groceries.  
a. in      b. of      c. back      d. from
8. I'm going to buy some ..... from the supermarket.  
a. museum      b. train      c. groceries      d. tree

(امتحان مجمع الغربية ٢٠٢١)



### 3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Ahmed is an assistant at Egypt supermarket. He saw a boy. The boy ran into the store. He stopped and said, "Oh, no! I forgot the list!" He ran out. Then, the boy ran back into the supermarket. He had the list in his hand. He got a trolley and put the groceries in it. He came to Ahmed's checkout. The boy paid for the groceries and went home. He left his trolley with the groceries at the supermarket. The boy's mother went to the supermarket with him. Ahmed showed her the trolley. She took it and went back home.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The boy got a ..... and put the groceries in it.  
a. pot                      b. trolley                      c. bag                      d. basket
- Ahmed works at Egypt .....  
a. school                      b. factory                      c. supermarket                      d. hospital

#### B. Answer the following:

- Who showed the boy's mother the trolley?  
.....

- What did the boy forget?  
.....

### 4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

- list - Ramy - the - forget - Did ? (Beni Suf 2016)  
.....

- left - the groceries - at - the supermarket - I . (Assiut - El-Badary 2019)  
.....

### 5 Punctuate the following sentences:

- WB How did asmaa go to Aswan  
.....

- Yes Ali went there alone  
.....





# How to write

كيف نكتب

## Unit 3

### Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تعمل على استرجاع المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

1. I ironed a shirt by myself.
2. He sliced fruit by himself.
3. They didn't walk to school by themselves.
4. We didn't stay at home by ourselves.

### Step 2 Word Practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدريب على المفردات اللغوية.

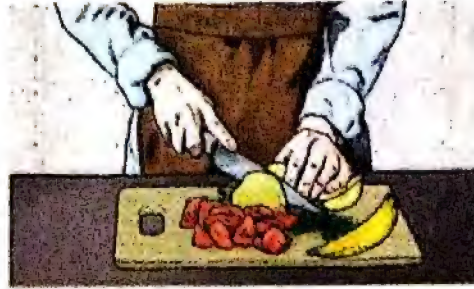
يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

اختر واكتب الكلمة : Choose and write the word :

fruit - bought - chopped



1. He ..... groceries  
by himself.



2. She sliced ..... by herself.

### Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدريب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

Choose and write the word :

stayed - stay - yourself

1. You washed your hair by .....
2. I didn't ..... home by myself.



### Step 2 Your idea web

الخطوة الرابعة: شبكة أفكار خاصة بالكتابة  
يتم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به (تكوين جمل) باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي درسها.

• Choose and complete the idea web.

stay - walked - himself - chop - write

went to the dentist by

He

to school  
yesterday.

vegetables by  
ourselves.

we  
didn't

home by  
ourselves.

### Step 3 Your writing

الخطوة الخامسة: كتابة موضوعك.

بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادراً على كتابة موضوع إنشائي أو بريد إلكتروني.

• Read, cut and stick.

"At the bakery"

"My holiday"

Cut & Paste here  
from page 293

Cut & Paste here  
from page 293

#### Writing checklist

- ☐ 1. My sentences begin with a capital letter.
- ☐ 2. My sentences end with a full stop.
- ☐ 3. My words are in the correct order.





تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل واسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. Ramy - a bus - himself - took - by.
2. a fresh - I - get - pie - for you - will.

فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة .
1		
2	will get	

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. list, - **Don't** - Salma - forget - the.
2. laundry - yourself - **Do** - by - the.

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة .
1		
2		

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. **Where** - go - Ramy - did ?
2. of pies - have - today - **What kinds** - you - do ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة ؟
1				
2	What kinds of pies			

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. **Can** - you - help - I ?
2. you - **Did** - do - laundry - the ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة ؟
1	I		
2			





# Test your skills

## Unit 3

If you get a red dot you need to review the unit again in the next lesson.

### 1 Listening skill

Listen to the conversation.  
Listen and tick (✓).

أنا سأذهب إلى السوق  
أنا سأذهب إلى السوق (✓) أنا سأذهب إلى السوق  
أنا سأذهب إلى السوق

1. Sorry, we are out of cherry.  
☐ Do you have any cherry  
pies?  
☐ Do you have any apple  
pies?

### 2 Reading skill

Read and tick (✓).

أنا سأذهب إلى السوق (✓) أنا سأذهب إلى السوق  
أنا سأذهب إلى السوق

2. Which word is correct?  
I'm going to the \_\_\_\_\_ as I  
have a toothache.  
☐ grocer  
☐ dentist

### 3 Writing skill

3. Write two sentences about  
the daily activities.

أنا سأذهب إلى السوق  
أنا سأذهب إلى السوق

أنا سأذهب إلى السوق  
أنا سأذهب إلى السوق

أنا سأذهب إلى السوق  
أنا سأذهب إلى السوق

(158)

### My spelling test

Look and write.

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

My work in Unit is:

- ☐ 100  
☐ 100  
☐ 100  
☐ 100





## 1. Conversation

Baker : Good morning. Can I help you?

Customer : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today?

Baker : We have lemon, peach and apple.

Customer : Do you have any cherry pies?

Baker : Sorry. We're out of cherry. But the apple pies are very nice.

Customer : How much are they?

Baker : They're ten pounds each.

Customer : Oh, that's too expensive. How much are the peach pies?

Baker : They're five pounds each.

Customer : Okay. I'll take one.

Baker : Great! I'll get a fresh pie for you.

## 2. Vocabulary

walk to school

يمشي إلى المدرسة

do the laundry

يغسل الملابس

iron a shirt

يكوي قميص

take a bus

يأخذ (يستقل) أتوبيس

stay home

يمكث بالبيت

go to the dentist

يذهب لطبيب الأسنان

chop vegetables

يقطع الخضروات

slice fruit

يقطع الفاكهة إلى شرائح

wash my hair

أغسل شعري

buy groceries

يشترى البقالة

## 3. Language Focus

## \* Emphatic pronouns

ضمائر تأكيد

يعود ضمير التوكيد على التكلم أو الفاعل في الجملة وإذا وضعت by قبله فهي للتأكيد.

- I chopped the vegetables by myself.

- We did the laundry by ourselves.

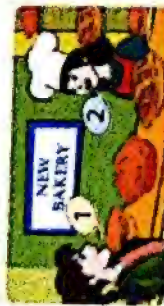
- Hoda sliced the fruit by herself.

ضمير التوكيد	ضمير الفاعل
myself	I
himself	He
herself	She
itself	It
yourself	You (مفرد)
yourselves	You (جمع)
ourselves	We
themselves	They



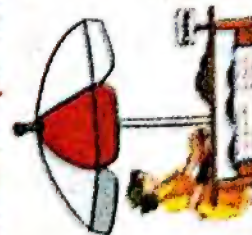
**A.** Number the sentences in the correct order:

رقم الجمل بالترتيب الصحيح :



**B. Read the question. Write the answer:**

1. What kinds of cookies does Sarah have?  
She has peanut butter, chocolate chip,  
lemon, and butter cookies.
2. Does she have any chocolate chip cookies?  
Yes, she does.
- How much are the lemon cookies?



**A. Look and write:** : نظر و لکے

انظر واكتب

Hisham's Morning



- |                                  |           |
|----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. He's going to wash his hair   | at 7:15.  |
| 2. He's going to iron a shirt    | at 8:10.  |
| 3. He's going to buy groceries   | at 9:20.  |
| 4. He's going to chop vegetables | at 10:30. |
| 5. He's going to slice fruit     | at 10:40. |
| 6. He's going to do the laundry  | at 11:25. |

**B. Look and write.** *جستق ٻڌل*

U.S. 100



She likes to do the laundry.

She doesn't like to iron a shirt.

may like to chop vegetables.

new day - like a shiny light.

1990



**A. Read and write:** اقرأ واكتب

1. she ☐ herself ☐
2. he ☐ ☐
3. I ☐ ☐
4. they ☐ ☐
5. we ☐ ☐
6. you ☐ or ☐

**B. Read and write True or False:** اقرأ واكتب (True) او (False):

1. He walked to school by himself. ☐ False ☐
2. He washed his hair by himself. ☐ True ☐
3. He didn't go to the dentist by himself. ☐ True ☐
4. He didn't buy groceries by himself. ☐ False ☐



**C. What did they do? Look and write.** ماذا فعلوا؟ انظر واكتب.



1. I sliced fruit by myself. ☐
2. We bought groceries by ourselves. ☐
3. You ironed a shirt by yourself. ☐
4. You took a bus by yourself. ☐

**A. Read and write:** اقرأ واكتب

Today, I'm going to...	On Sunday, I...
1. buy groceries	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> bought groceries
2. take a bus	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> took a bus
3. go to the dentist	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> went to the dentist
4. chop vegetables	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> chopped vegetables
5. walk to school	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> walked to school
6. slice fruit	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> sliced fruit
7. iron a shirt	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ironed a shirt
8. wash my hair	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> washed my hair

**B. Look and write:** انظر واكتب



1. ☒ She did the laundry by herself. ☒ She didn't stay home by herself.
2. ☒ He chopped vegetables by himself. ☒ He didn't take a bus by himself.
3. ☒ They washed their hair by themselves. ☒ They didn't stay home by themselves.



A. Read. Then number the pictures in the correct order:

اقرأ ثم رتب الصور بالترتيب الصحيح

**Sally Remembered!**

"Sally," said her father, "Will you go to the supermarket for me, please?" "No problem, Dad," said Sally. She wrote the grocery list and took the money with her. She walked to the supermarket. Sally put the groceries in the basket. Then she went to the checkout line. She went back home in a short time.



B. Read the question. Write the answer.

1. What did Sally write?

2. Why did Sally go to the supermarket?

3. Where did Sally put the groceries?

اقرأ السؤال وكتب الجواب.

A. Draw some pies. Write a price for each pie. Then answer the questions:

رسم بعض البسكويت. اكتب سعر لكل بسكويت. ثم اجب عن الاسئلة.

Answers will vary.

1. How many kinds of pies did you draw?

2. Which one is your favorite?

3. How much do your pies cost?

B. Answer the questions: اجب عن الاسئلة

Answers will vary.

1. Can you drive a car by yourself? No, I can't.

2. Can you bake cookies by yourself?

3. Can you use a computer by yourself?

4. Can you cook breakfast by yourself?

5. Can you ride a bus by yourself?

C. Punctuate the following:

1. asmaa went to alexandria last friday

asmaa went to alexandria last friday

2. how did asmaa go to alexandria

how did asmaa go to alexandria

اسماء ذهبت الى الاسكندرية الجمعة الماضية



# Exam Language Bank

Unit 3

## 1. Vocabulary

الترجمة العربية للمفردات في الوحدة 3 من كتاب اللغة الإنجليزية

cherry	فراولة	slice fruit	تقطيع الفواكه
extensive	واسع	do the laundry	غسل الملابس
fresh	طازج	buy groceries	شراء البقالة
out of	خارج	list	قائمة
go to the dentist	الذهاب إلى طبيب الأسنان	check out	مراجعة الحساب
iron a shirt	غسل قميص	trolley	عربة التسوق
stay home	البقاء في المنزل	problem	مشكلة

## 2. Language

الترجمة العربية للمفردات في الوحدة 3 من كتاب اللغة الإنجليزية

1. I ironed<sup>1</sup> a shirt by myself.

2. I didn't iron<sup>2</sup> a shirt by myself.

3. We did the laundry by ourselves<sup>3</sup>.

4. She sliced fruit by<sup>4</sup> herself.

### Check Language

- 1. غسلت قميصي بمفردي.
- 2. لم أغسل قميصي بمفردي.
- 3. فعلنا الغسيل بأنفسنا.
- 4. قطعت الفواكه بمفردي.

## 3. Language functions

ترجمة التمارين في الوحدة 3 من كتاب اللغة الإنجليزية

Questions	Answers
• What kinds of pies do you have today?	• We have lemon, peach and apple pies.
• Do you have any cherry pies?	• Sorry, we're out of cherry.
• How much are they?	• They're ten pounds each.
• Can I help you?	• Yes, please.





# Test 5 on Unit 3

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations  
اختبار على الوحدة مجمع من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات

## A Listening



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب  
(Menia - Abo Korkas 2021)

### 1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. A cherry pie.  
b. A lemon pie.
2. a. We have lemon, peach and apple.  
b. We have green, yellow and black.
3. a. How much are the apple pies ?  
b. How much are the loaves ?
4. a. Can you iron a shirt by yourself ?  
b. Can you ride a bike by yourself ?

(Beni Suef 2014)

(Gharbia 2017)

(Fayoum 2016)

### 2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

- Baker : Good morning. Can I (1) ..... you ?  
Nada : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today ?  
Baker : We have lemon, cherry and (2) ..... pies.  
Nada : How (3) ..... is the lemon pie ?  
Baker : It's five pounds.  
Nada : Okay, I will (4) ..... one.

(Qena 2017)

## B Reading

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shady and I cleaned the room by ..... . (المتحان مجمع قليوبية ٢٠٢١)  
a. himself      b. myself      c. ourselves      d. themselves
2. Do the laundry by ..... .  
(Beni Suef - Somosta 2018 / Beheira-Etay Al-Baroud 2019)  
a. herself      b. yourselves      c. themselves      d. ourselves
3. I'll get a ..... pie for you.  
a. bad      b. sad      c. fresh      d. hungry

(المتحان مجمع أسوان ٢٠٢١)



4. Please, \_\_\_\_\_ these vegetables to make a salad. (Giza 2017)  
a. iron                      b. do                      c. walk                      d. chop
5. Oh! That's \_\_\_\_\_ expensive. I can't buy it. (Tsmalia 2014)  
a. much                      b. to                      c. too                      d. as
6. Who will \_\_\_\_\_ the laundry? (Suez 2014)  
a. go                      b. stay                      c. do                      d. chop
7. He is going to \_\_\_\_\_ his shirt to go to school. (Cairo 2015)  
a. iron                      b. tell                      c. sign                      d. turn
8. Sorry, we're \_\_\_\_\_ cherry pies. (Gharbia 2015)  
a. out of                      b. in                      c. from                      d. for

**4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

1. herself - yourself - him - itself (Qalyoubia 2020) ( \_\_\_\_\_ )
2. he - she - we - blue (Fayoum - Youssef El Sedeeek 2020) ( \_\_\_\_\_ )
3. Monday - holiday - Friday - Tuesday (Beheira - Damanhour 2018) ( \_\_\_\_\_ )
4. went - chopped - iron - bought (Dakahlia - Beni Ebaid 2019) ( \_\_\_\_\_ )
5. free - expensive - ready - today (Gharbia 2017) ( \_\_\_\_\_ )

**5 Read the passage and answer the questions:**

A father told his son to go to the bakery to buy some bread for breakfast. The father gave him some money. The son walked to get the bread. When he arrived there, he found that he forgot the money. The son ran back home to get the money. He put the bread in a plastic bag. Now, it is 8:00 a.m. The son is late for school.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The son went to the bakery .....  
a. by bus                      b. by car                      c. on foot                      d. by bike
2. The son went to the bakery in the .....  
a. evening                      b. morning                      c. afternoon                      d. night



**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What did the father give his son ?

4. Did the son put the bread in a basket ?

### C Writing

(Qalyoubin 2014)

**6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :**

Write an email to your friend Nada to tell her about your favourite pie. Your name is Ahmed. Your email address is ahmed@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nada@yahoo.com.

قالب بريد في نهاية الكتاب

To :  
From :  
Subject :

**7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :**

1. Ramy - the - Did - list - forget ?

(Beheira 2017)

2. stayed - Tuesday - I - on - home.

(Kafr El-Sheikh - El-Riad 2018)

**8 Punctuate the following sentences :**

1. what kinds of pies do you have today

(Giza - Al-Ayat 2019)

2. Yes we're out of water

(Giza 2020)





# Test 6 on Unit 3

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



يمكنك حل الاختبار الإلكتروني الخاص بك

تدوين

## A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

1. a. They're ten pounds each.

b. They're five pounds each.

2. a. They have got many apple pies.

b. They have got five pies.

3. a. Do you have any cherry pies?

b. Do you have any apple pies?

4. a. What do you have for lunch?

b. What do you have for dinner?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل

Rokaya : Good morning. Do you have (1) .....  
cherry pies?

Nada : Sorry. We're (2) ..... of cherry. But the apple  
pies are very nice.

Rokaya : (3) ..... much are they?

Nada : They're ten pounds (4) .....

Rokaya : Oh, that's too expensive. How much are the peach pies?

Nada : They're five pounds each.

## B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My teeth hurt. I'm going to the .....

a. baker

b. dentist

c. waiter

d. barber

2. Who will ..... the laundry?

a. do

b. go

c. stay

d. shop

3. How ..... does an apple pie cost?

a. many

b. much

c. often

d. old



4. I ..... take the bus as I go on foot.  
a. do                      b. don't                      c. does                      d. doesn't
5. I buy my things ..... myself.  
a. by                      b. as                      c. with                      d. at
6. He ..... the money so he ran back home to get it.  
a. did                      b. went                      c. forgot                      d. arrived
7. Can you chop vegetables by ..... ?  
a. yourself                      b. himself                      c. herself                      d. themselves
8. Ramy put the groceries in the .....  
a. book                      b. trolley                      c. door                      d. table

**4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

1. baker - doctor - teacher - cherry ( ..... )
2. milk - bread - lemonade - orange juice ( ..... )
3. ten - slice - four - twelve ( ..... )
4. chop - bought - washed - ironed ( ..... )
5. myself - himself - they - herself ( ..... )

**5 Read the passage and answer the questions:**

Today is Friday. It's a holiday for all people except my mum. It's a busy day. She stays home and does a lot of activities. We help her. She does the laundry and irons shirts. She gives my father a grocery list. He goes to the supermarket to buy groceries. My sister chops vegetables and slices fruit. I feed the birds. We have lunch at home. In the evening, we watch TV.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. They have lunch at .....  
a. restaurant      b. school      c. home      d. bank
2. They ..... in the evening.  
a. iron shirts      b. watch TV      c. do the laundry      d. slice fruit



**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Who slices the fruit ?

4. Where does father go ?

**C Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences.**

"Supermarkets"

هناك حدة في نهاية الكتاب

**7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

1. paid - Who - for - groceries - the ?

2. today - We - out of - cherry - are - pies.

**8 Punctuate the following sentences:**

1. what did Ramy do on Friday

2. Amira and Heba can t chop vegetables

تنويه

تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية كل وحدة والملحق





# Stop here!

## 1. Mini-test for Al-Azhar Students

اختبار سريع للطلاب

### 1 Look and write a paragraph of Four sentences:

Guiding words:

bakery - cherry - prices - good

.....

.....

.....

.....



### 2 Punctuate the following sentence:

we should walk on the pavement mum

## 2. Use your brain, think smart

استخدم عقلك، فكر بذكاء

### Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Kareem and I bought the groceries by .....

- a. yourselves      b. themselves      c. ourselves      d. himself

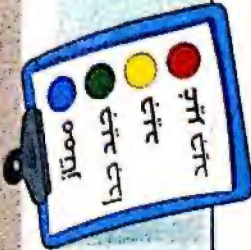
2. Slice fruit by ....., Mona.

- a. myself      b. herself      c. yourself      d. himself



If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد .  
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.



# 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- How can I ..... you ?  
a. play   b. help   c. read   d. write
- Was there a bank across ..... the library ?  
a. from   b. in   c. of   d. on
- Nancy Johnson ..... the first ice cream churn.  
a. invented   b. played   c. bought   d. wrote
- ..... there a library next to the hospital ?  
a. Were   b. Was   c. Are   d. Do
- We're open ..... Fridays.  
a. in   b. on   c. at   d. above
- It costs two pounds for Egyptians and twenty pounds for .....  
a. foreigners   b. pupils   c. doctors   d. teachers

- John Montagu invented the .....  
a. sandwich   b. pizza   c. popcorn   d. juice
- There was a bank ..... of the hotel.  
a. across   b. next   c. behind   d. in front

## 2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

- does - it - How - cost - much ?  
.....
- There - was - above - post office - a library - the .  
.....

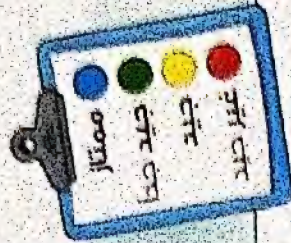
# General Revision on Units 1 , 2 and 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ١ ، ٢ و ٣



## Mini-Test on

## Unit 2



If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد .  
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I'm ready .....  
a. order                      b. to order  
c. ordering                  d. orders
- I'm going to ..... two pieces of apple pie.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. having                  d. had
- Mona had two cups of .....  
a. turkey                    b. coffee  
c. apple pie                  d. pizza
- Do you want the steak rare, ..... or well done?  
a. medium                  b. tall                      c. sad                      d. happy
- She ate a ..... of bread for breakfast.  
a. loaf                      b. cup                      c. glass                    d. bottle
- This restaurant ..... dinner.  
a. serves                    b. plays                    c. opens                    d. writes
- ..... cans of lemonade did she have?  
a. How                      b. Where  
c. How much                  d. How many

8. The prices of this restaurant expensive.

- a. don't                      b. wasn't                    c. isn't                      d. aren't

### 2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- plate - bottle - cup - cherry ( )
- water - milk - coffee - apple ( )
- a slice of - a can of - pizza - a piece of ( )
- good - delicious - well done - steak ( )
- had - did - ate - make ( )

### 3 Punctuate the following sentences:

- What s today's special, mona?  
.....
- I ll have French Fries and salad  
.....



## Mini-Test on

## Unit 3

If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد.  
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I sliced fruit by .....  
a. herself      b. himself  
c. myself      d. itself
- My brother always forgets the grocery ..... and money.  
a. notebook      b. list  
c. test      d. ball
- It's ..... expensive. I can't buy it.  
a. two      b. to      c. too      d. not to
- Sorry, we're ..... of cherry pies.  
a. on      b. out      c. from      d. in
- I'm going to the ..... as I have a toothache.  
a. dentist      b. grocer  
c. nurse      d. teacher

- I stayed ..... on Friday as it was a holiday.  
a. park      b. office      c. work      d. home
- My little sister can ..... vegetables.  
a. chop      b. do      c. stay      d. iron
- I ..... take the bus as I go on foot.  
a. do      b. don't  
c. does      d. doesn't

### 2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

- peach - How - are - pies - much - the ?  
.....
- himself - Hani - goes - school - to - by.  
.....





## Quiz 2 on Units 1 , 2 & 3

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (1 ، 2 و 3)

يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات السابقة.

### Model A

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Please, \_\_\_\_\_ the vegetables to make a salad.  
a. do                      b. make                      c. chop                      d. work
2. This restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ good lunch and dinner.  
a. serves                      b. eats                      c. opens                      d. plays
3. They take the train at the train \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. pavement                      b. station                      c. library                      d. bridge
4. The box is \_\_\_\_\_ the desk.  
a. between                      b. behind                      c. across                      d. next
5. Hani and Mona did the laundry by \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. himself                      b. ourselves                      c. themselves                      d. yourselves

### Model B

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He'll take a \_\_\_\_\_ of apple pie.  
a. glass                      b. loaf                      c. cup                      d. piece
2. Yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ a bus to the park.  
a. take                      b. took                      c. taking                      d. takes
3. This park is open \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. day                      b. week                      c. month                      d. daily
4. Does he \_\_\_\_\_ a baked potato ?  
a. wants                      b. wanted                      c. want                      d. wanting
5. We went to the \_\_\_\_\_ to see a show.  
a. theatre                      b. bank                      c. school                      d. hotel



# UNIT 4

## Visiting a Film Studio

زيارة استوديو سينمائي



### Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

#### Listening Speaking

- make a telephone call إجراء مكالمة هاتفية
- leave a message ترك رسالة نصية
- exchange information about the frequency of activities in the present تبادل معلومات عن تكرار الأنشطة في الزمن الحاضر
- identify speakers in a conversation التعرف على المتحدثين في المحادثة

#### Reading

- read a postcard قراءة بطاقة بريدية

#### Vocabulary

- activities
- التعرف على القدرات المعرفية الخاصة ببعض الأنشطة

#### Grammar

- Adverbs of frequency (always, usually, often, sometimes, hardly ever, never) تعلم ظروف التكرار
- Yes / No questions with (do) and (does)
- تعلم كيفية تكوين صيغة السؤال بـ "do" و "does"

### ما يتعلمه الطالب :

• كراسة التمارين التفاعلية للإثنين الوحدة

• كراسة التمارين التفاعلية والبحث بنمطية الكتاب  
Master your term : درك الكراسة التفاعلية



# Conversation Time

SB page 19 WB page 10

## Key Vocabulary

right now	حالياً / الآن	a film studio	استوديو تصوير (سينمائي)
be back	يعود	late	متأخر
message	رسالة		

## Notes

take a message

- Can you take a message ?
- May I speak to Ahmed ?
- I'll be late for lunch.

١. يتلقى رسالة ...

٢. يتحدث إلى ... \* speak to + شخص

٣. متأخر عن ... \* late for + (n.) اسم

## Active Vocabulary

hello	مرحباً	number	رقم
sorry	أسف	got it	فهمت / وصلت الرسالة
Who .. ?	من (للعقل) ... ؟	talk	يتكلم
Sure.	بالطبع / بالتأكيد.	okay	حسنًا
today	اليوم	May I .. ?	هل بإمكانى ... ؟

## Notes

talk to + (شخص)

١. يتكلم مع / يتحدث إلى

- Asmaa talks to Salwa every day.

٢. ينطق حرفي (ph) في كلمة (telephone) مثل صوت حرف (f).

May I ... ?

٣. هل بإمكانى ... ؟

May I speak to Ahmed ?

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
call	يتصل بـ - يُدعى	called		know	يعرف	knew	
				speak	يتحدث	spoke	



## Exercise on Vocabulary

• Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

دع دائرة دول الكلمة المشابهة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة.

1. message - yellow - blue - green (West Fayoum 2018) ( )
2. Who - What - home - Where (Port Said 2017) ( )
3. speak - sorry - know - call ( ) ( )
4. in - for - number - to ( ) ( )
5. film studio - school - today - park ( ) ( )

## ★ A telephone call

مكالمة هاتفية

• Characters شخصيات المحادثة



• Topic موضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is a telephone call between a man and a woman. The woman wants to talk to Ahmed. But he's not in right now. So, she leaves a message for him.

محادثة اليوم هي مكالمة تليفونية بين رجل وامرأة. تريد السيدة أن تتحدث إلى أحمد لكنه ليس موجود الآن. لذلك تترك له رسالة.

**A** Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.



**Man** : Hello !

**الرجل** : مرحبًا !

**Woman** : Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?

**السيدة** : مرحبًا. هل يمكنني التحدث إلى أحمد، من فضلك ؟

**Man** : He's not in right now.

**الرجل** : هو غير موجود الآن.



**Woman :** What time will he be back ?

**Man :** I'm sorry. I don't know.

**Woman :** Can you take a message ?

**Man :** Sure. Who's calling ?

**Woman :** This is Salwa Kamel. I'm going to be late for lunch today. I'll see him at 1:00.

**Man :** Got it. What's your number ?

**Woman :** 35551839.

**Man :** Okay. I'll give him your message.

**Woman :** Thanks.

**Man :** You're welcome.

السيدة : ما الوقت الذي سيعود فيه ؟

الرجل : مع الأسف. أنا لا أعرف.

السيدة : هل يمكنك أن توصل له رسالة ؟

الرجل : بالتأكيد. من المتصل ؟

السيدة : معك سلوى كامل. أخبره أنني سأتأخر عن موعد الغداء اليوم. وسوف أقابله في تمام الساعة الواحدة.

الرجل : فهمت رسالتك. ما هو رقم تليفونك ؟

السيدة : ٣٥٥٥١٨٣٩.

الرجل : حسنًا. سوف أخبره برسالتك.

السيدة : شكرًا.

الرجل : على الرحب والسعة.

## Language Functions



1

- لبدء الحوار عبر الهاتف نستخدم :  
- Hello ؟ مرحبًا ؟
- لطلب التحدث إلى شخص ما نستخدم :  
- May I speak to (اسم الشخص) , please ؟
- هل يمكنني أن أتحدث إلى ... من فضلك ؟
- في حالة عدم وجود الشخص نقول :  
- He's not in right now.
- ليس موجودًا الآن.



2

- للسؤال عن الوقت تستخدم :
- ما الوقت ... ؟ - What time ... ?
- What time will he be back ?
- في أي وقت سيعود ؟
- للرد بعدم المعرفة نقول :
- I'm sorry. I don't know.
- مع الأسف، أنا لا أعرف.



3

- لطلب ترك رسالة لشخص ما عبر الهاتف نستخدم :
- Can you take a message ?
- هل يمكنك أن تتلقى رسالة ؟
- وللتعبير عن الموافقة :
- Sure. Who's calling ?
- بالتأكيد. من المتصل ؟

4

- عند تقديم الشخص لنفسه أو لغيره.
- This is + (اسم الشخص).
- This is Salwa Kamel.







What's your number?  
 It's 1-234-5678.



## Exercise on Language Functions

- Listen and circle:
- a. He is at the cinema.      b. He is at home.
  - a. This is Mona Ahmed.      b. This is Salwa Kamel.
  - a. What time will he be back?      b. When will he be back?
  - a. May I speak to Ahmed, please?      b. Can I speak to Hany, please?

## Role-play the conversation.





## General

# Exercises on Conversation Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Listen and complete: استمع إلى مكالمة واسمعي (استمعوا للاستماع في نسخة أخرى)

Asmaa : Good morning.

Amany : Good morning.

Asmaa : (1) ..... I speak to Nada, please ?

Amany : She is not in (2) ..... now.

Asmaa : What (3) ..... will she be back ?

Amany : I'm (4) ..... I don't know.

(Qena - Farshout 2020)

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What's your telephone ..... ? - 233055 (Dakahlia - Met Ghamr 2020)

- a. address      b. time      c. number      d. day

2. My brother isn't ..... right now.

- a. in      b. on      c. next      d. of

3. What time will he ..... back ?

(امتحان مجمع أسوان ٢٠٢١)

- a. does      b. has      c. is      d. be

4. I'm ..... I'm late for school.

(Qalyoubia - Takh 2020)

- a. sorry      b. late      c. small      d. old

5. Can you ..... a message ?

- a. took      b. taking      c. take      d. takes

6. I'm going to be ..... for lunch today.

- a. good      b. nice      c. late      d. sorry

7. .... 's calling ? - This is Amira.

- a. How      b. What      c. Which      d. Who

8. I'll ..... you my number.

- a. eat      b. give      c. go      d. call



3 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Sarah was in her office yesterday. She had a telephone call from Mr Ibrahim. He wanted to speak to Mr Sarnet. Mr Sarnet was in the office. Mr Ibrahim left him a message. He said he was calling Mr Sarnet at 2:00. Sarah gave the message to Mr Sarnet when he was back. So Mr Sarnet called Mr Ibrahim and said hello to him.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mr Ibrahim wanted to
 

a. see	b. call	c. leave	d. speak
--------	---------	----------	----------
2. Mr Sarnet was
 

a. in the office	b. not in the office
c. calling	d. wrote

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Mr Ibrahim leave for Mr Sarnet?
4. What did Mr Ibrahim want Sarah to tell Mr Sarnet?

(Check Study File Exercise 10)

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences.  
"Phone call"

(Check Study File Exercise 11)

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences.

1. my - is - This - number - telephone. (Check Study File Exercise 12)
2. Ahmed - speak - I - May - to - please? (Check Study File Exercise 13)



## 5th page 20 WD page 20





**A Listen and repeat.**

استمع وردد

**Key Vocabulary**

**Activities**

أنشطة

**1** wear a wig




يرتدي باروكة

**2** drive a sports car



يقود سيارة رياضية

**3** put on make-up



يضع مكياج

**4** make friends



يكون صداقات

**5** get a sunburn



يأخذ حمام شمس

**6** listen to music



يستمع إلى الموسيقى

**7** take a nap



يأخذ غفوة «قيلولة»

**8** talk on the phone



تتحدث في الهاتف

**9** sign autographs



يوقع اوتوجرافات

**10** have an accident



يتعرض لحادث

حرف (g) في كلمة (sign)  
صامت (silent) لا ينطق.  
حرف (L) في كلمة (talk)  
صامت (silent) لا ينطق.  
حرف (c) في كلمة  
(accident) الأول ينطق  
(k) والثاني ينطق (s)



استمع



## Key Vocabulary

lemonade  
bottle  
can

عصير ليمون chips  
زجاجة like  
علبة (من الضفيح)

رقائق البطاطس المقلية

يحب

## Note

like to + inf مصدر الفعل

يحب أن ...

- She likes to wear a wig.

## Conjugation of verbs

## تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
listen	يستمع	listened		wear	يرتدى	wore	
sign	يوقع	signed		put	يضع	put	
talk	يتحدث	talked		drive	يقود سيارة	drove	
				take	ياخذ	took	
				get	يحصل على	got	

**B** Point and say the words. اشر إلى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة.

**C** Listen and point. استمع و اشر إلى المتحدثين.

**Man** : I'll have a bottle of water, please.

**Woman** : Sorry. We're out of water. But the lemonade is very nice.

**Man** : Okay. I'll take a can of lemonade and some chips.





## UNIT 4

**A :** Hello ! May I speak to Dalia, please ?

**B :** She's not in right now.

**A :** Oh! Can you take a message ?

**B :** Sure.



**Man :** Can you do it by yourself ?

**Actor :** No, I can't.

**Man :** Okay. I will do it for you.



احرص على إقتناء

 EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية  
للمرحلة الابتدائية

المراجعة النهائية  
ونماذج الامتحانات







## General

# Exercises on Word Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. wig - wear - make - help (Beni Suez 2014) ( ..... )
2. water - salad - lemonade - coffee  
(Suez 2014 / Kafr El-Sheikh - Sadi Salem 2018 / Alexandria - Borg El Arab 2019)  
( ..... )
3. actor - autograph - driver - waiter (South Sinai 2014) ( ..... )
4. on - sign - in - by ( ..... )
5. make - fruit - drive - get (Souhag 2015) ( ..... )

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... I speak to Sameh, please ? - Sure.  
a. May                      b. Is                      c. Do                      d. Have  
(امتحان مجمع البحيرة ٢٠٢١)
2. Ali sat in the sun and ..... a sunburn. (Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)  
a. got                      b. put on                      c. drove                      d. ate
3. Do you ever ..... an autograph ? (Menia - Samalout 2020)  
a. take                      b. paint                      c. sign                      d. put
4. My mother doesn't put ..... make-up.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. for                      d. to  
(Alexandria 2015 / Sharkia 2017)
5. I usually get a ..... when I go to Alexandria. (Menia 2015)  
a. wig                      b. nap                      c. speech                      d. sunburn
6. Last week, Hany ..... an accident.  
a. had                      b. have                      c. has                      d. to have
7. Does she ever wear a ..... ? (Qena 2020)  
a. nap                      b. cart                      c. wig                      d. shop
8. **SB** He ..... on the phone.  
a. talking                      b. talk                      c. talked                      d. to talk



**Read the passage and answer the questions:**

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What is the woman doing ?

**Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:**



مخاطب عليه في نهاية الكتاب

**Punctuate the following sentences:**

- (Minia - Maghagha 2018)

- (Cairo - Shrouk 2020)



# Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 21&22 WB pages 21&22

## Focus Time

### A Listen and repeat.

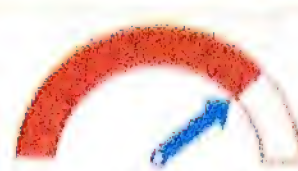
استمع وكرر



1 100%  
always  
دائماً



2 80%  
usually  
عادة



3 70%  
often  
غالباً



4 50%  
sometimes  
أحياناً



5 10%  
hardly ever  
نادراً جداً / بالكاد



6 0%  
never  
أبداً

لاحظ الأفعال التالية :

wear → wears

drive → drives

put → puts

fall → falls

get → gets

listen → listens

take → takes

talk → talks

sign → signs

have → has

### B Listen and repeat.

استمع وكرر

Do you  
Does he  
ever listen to  
music ?

Yes,

I  
he

always  
usually  
often  
sometimes

listen  
listens

to  
music.

No,

I  
he

hardly ever  
never

listen  
listens

to  
music.

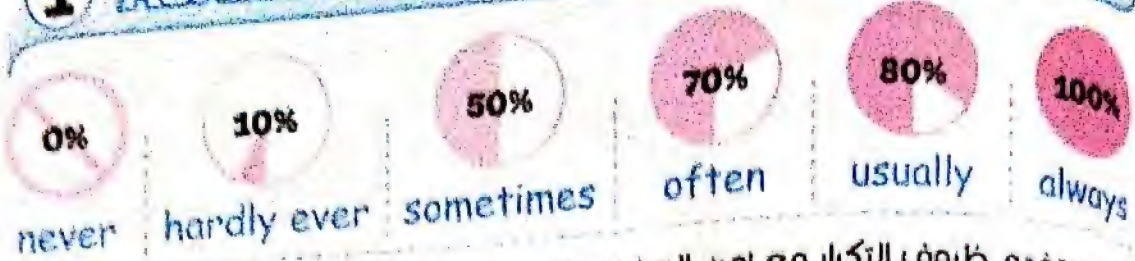


## Language Focus



١. ظروف التكرار

## 1 Adverbs of frequency



نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما.

ex. - I always get up early.

ظروف التكرار تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد "verb to be" في الجملة.

ex. - We usually go out on Fridays. (قبل الفعل الأساسي)

- We are never late for school. (بعد verb to be)

## 2 The Present Simple Tense

٢. زمن المضارع البسيط

## Formation التكوين

يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من :

1  
Affirmative  
statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

I / You / We /

They / اسم جمع

+ التصريف الأول للفعل

ex. - I usually listen to music.

التصريف الأول للفعل مضافاً له "s" أو "es" أو "ies" :

He / She / It

+

(inf.)

+

or

/ (All) اسم مفرد

مصدر الفعل

es

• أما التي تنتهي بـ (sh, ch)

(ss, x, o) يضاف لها (es)

ex. - He usually gets a sunburn.

- She always watches TV at 10:00 p.m.



## 4 ملاحظات:

\* الفعل المنتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (es) مع حذف (y) :

ex. - She **carries** a bag.

\* الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s) :

- He **plays** volleyball every Friday.

\* الفعل (have) لا يضاف له s ولكن مع (He - She - It) نستخدم (has).

- He **has** brown hair.

## Usage

## الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

- He **likes** reading books on holidays.

- The sun **rises** in the east.

## 2

## Negative statements

الجملة النفية  
المسقة

I / you / we / they	اسم جمع	+ don't	} + (inf.) مصدر الفعل
He / she / it	اسم مفرد	+ doesn't	

ex. - I **don't** play football.

- He **doesn't** wear a wig.

## 4 ملاحظات:

\* الفعل بعد (doesn't - don't) يكون في المصدر (أي بدون أي إضافات).

\* استخدام (hardly ever - never) يعطى معنى النفي مع عدم حذف (s) في

نهاية الفعل مع الضمائر (He - She - It) أو أي اسم مفرد.

ex. - He **never** takes a nap. - They **hardly ever** walk to school.

## 3

## Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهام

السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟ Yes / No Questions

Do + I / you / we / they	اسم جمع	} + ever + inf.	} باقي السؤال مصدر الفعل
Does + he / she / it	اسم مفرد		



Long answers الجواب الطويل

Yes, + I / you / they / we + always / usually / sometimes / often + inf.   
 (أنا / أنت / هم / هي / نحن)

No, + he / she / it + never / hardly ever + (s, es, ies)   
 (هو / هي / هي)

ever : تستخدم في السؤال فقط وعند الإجابة نستبدل بأحد ظروف التكرار السابقة.

- Do you ever wear a wig? - Yes, I always wear a wig.

عند الإجابة بالنفي يمكن استخدام "never" أو "hardly ever" مع ملاحظة عدم حذف "s" في نهاية الفعل مع الضمائر (He / She / It) أو أي اسم مفرد.

- Does he ever listen to music? - No, he never listens to music.

Exercise on Language Focus

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She sometimes ..... to music. (Souhag - Gerga 2012)  
a. listening b. listen c. listened d. listens
2. .... you ever sign autographs? (Beheira - Damanhour 2012)  
a. Is b. Do c. Does d. Was
3. I ..... go to school on Friday. It's a holiday. (Cairo - El Salam 2019)  
a. ever b. never c. always d. usually
4. She ..... a sunburn.  
a. always gets b. gets always c. always get d. get always
5. She likes music. She ..... listens to music. (Cairo 2017)  
a. always b. hardly c. never d. ever
6. No, he ..... drives a sports car. (Beheira - Shubrakhit 2018)  
a. yet b. ever c. hardly ever d. every
7. Does he usually ..... a nap at noon? (Sharkia 2015)  
a. takes b. take c. taking d. took
8. She hardly ever ..... a wig.  
a. wearing b. wear c. to wear d. wears



**C Look at page (20). Listen and point.**

انظر إلى الصورة في كتاب الطالب صفحة (٢٠) ثم استمع واشر.

**A:** Do they ever have an accident ?

**B:** No, they hardly ever have an accident.



**Practice Time**

**A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.**

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

**Do you ever sign autographs ?** No, I hardly ever sign autographs.

**1** Do you ever listen to music ?

Yes, I usually listen to music.



**2** Does she ever talk on the phone ?

Yes, she always talks on the phone.



**3** Does he ever drive a sports car ?

Yes, he often drives a sports car.





Do they ever have an accident?



Does he ever get a sunburn?

Yes, he always gets a sunburn.



No, I never put on make-up.



Does he ever wear a wig?



Yes, he usually takes a nap.



**B** Look at page (20). Practise with a partner.

انظر إلى الصورة في كتاب الطالب صفحة (٢٠) ثم تدرب مع زميلك.





## General

# Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The film star is going to ..... some autographs. (*Qena - Deshna 2020*)  
a. sign                      b. signed                      c. signs                      d. signing
2. He always ..... a sunburn.  
a. puts                      b. gets                      c. talks                      d. takes
3. Does the actor wear a ..... ? (*Cairo 2020*)  
a. cart                      b. wig                      c. make-up                      d. nap
4. No, I ..... put on make-up. (*Aswan 2018*)  
a. never                      b. hardly                      c. often                      d. ever
5. No, she ..... plays in the street. (*Dakahlia - Talkha 2019*)  
a. usually                      b. always                      c. hardly ever                      d. ever
6. Does he ever take a ..... ? (*Assiut 2016*)  
a. speech                      b. music                      c. nap                      d. sunburn
7. Dina sometimes ..... a wig. (*The New Valley 2015*)  
a. wears                      b. wear                      c. wearing                      d. wore
8. She is a bad driver. She always ..... an accident.  
a. takes                      b. gets                      c. puts                      d. has

### 2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. always - actor - usually - never

(*Cairo - El-Basateen & Dar El-Salam 2015*) ( ..... )

2. school - wear - drive - put

( ..... )

3. plane - three - bus - bike (*Sharkia - Menia El-kamh 2018*) ( ..... )

4. hardly ever - never - fruit - often

( ..... )

5. Saturday - Tuesday - Friday - April

(*Dakahlia 2017*) ( ..... )



### 3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Every morning, Hala gets up at half past six. She has her breakfast with her family. She usually has bread, cheese or eggs and milk. Then, she carries her bag and walks to school, her house is not far from school. On her way to school, she buys a flower. She gives it to her English teacher. She usually has lunch at twelve. She goes home at two o'clock.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hala goes to school .....  
 a. by bus      b. on foot      c. by bike      d. by car
2. Hala has lunch at .....  
 a. night      b. home      c. ten      d. school

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. When does Hala get up ?

.....

4. Who does Hala give a flower ?

(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)

.....

### 4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. car - ever - She - drives - a sports - hardly.

(Menia 2020)

.....

2. Aya - sign - Do - autographs - and Faten - ever ?

(Alexandria 2020)

.....

### 5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. We don t go to school on Friday

(Dakahlia - Manzala 2018)

.....

2. Can i meet you on Friday

(Port Said 2020)

.....



# Reading & Your Time

SB pages 23 & 24 WB pages 23 & 24

## Key Vocabulary

studio	استوديو	film star	نجم سينمائي
adventure film	فيلم مغامرات	tonight	الليلة
actor	ممثل	actress	ممثلة
rehearse	يتدرب على أداء تمثيلي		

## Notes

1. كلمة (tonight) تأتي بدون حروف جر قبلها.  
- We're going to go to the cinema tonight.
2. أغلب الكلمات المنتهية بحرف (o) يضاف لها (es) عندما تجمع ولكن يوجد كلمات يضاف لها (s) ومنتهية بحرف (o).

a studio → studios

a radio → radios

## Active Vocabulary

cool	معتدل البرودة / رائع	citadel	قلعة
so	جداً / لذلك	water park	منتزه مائي
really	بالفعل / حقاً	restaurant	مطعم
family	عائلة	Universal Studios	استديوهات عالمية
yesterday	أمس	beach	شاطئ
today	اليوم	scene	مشهد (في فيلم أو مسرحية)
fun	مرح / ممتع	afternoon	فترة بعد الظهر

## Notes

1. يستخدم حرف الجر (in) مع فترات اليوم:  
- in the morning في الصباح  
- in the evening في المساء  
- in the afternoon في وقت الظهيرة  
\* بينما تستخدم (at) مع :  
- at night
2. يستخدم الفعل (have) مع التعبيرات الآتية :  
- Have fun. يستمتع بوقته.  
- Have a holiday. يأخذ أجازة.  
- Have a good time. يقضي وقتاً جميلاً.



## Conjugation of verbs

Regular Verbs		Irregular Verbs	
Present	ماضى	Present	ماضى
visit	زار	go	ذهب
watch	شاهد	eat	أكل
talk	تحدث	see	رأى
wait	انتظر	make	صنع
rehearse	تدرب على أداء تمثيلي	say	قال
			rehearsed

## Important expressions and prepositions

1. I'm having a good time.
2. It was fun.
3. I can't wait.
4. See you later.
5. at the studio
6. all kinds of ...

- أنا أقضي وقتاً ممتعاً.
- لقد كان ممتعاً.
- لا أستطيع الانتظار (عندي مهمة لذلك).
- أراك لاحقاً.
- في الاستوديو
- كل الأنواع من ...

## New places & people

Alexandria

Alexandria Library

Qaitbay Citadel

Florida

Disney World

Ahmed El-Sakka

Michael Stiles

أماكن وأشخاص جدد

الإسكندرية

مكتبة الإسكندرية

قلعة قايتباي (بالإسكندرية)

فلوريدا (ولاية أمريكية)

عالم ديزني (هو أكبر منتج ترفيهي في أمريكا والعالم)

وبجنوي على ملاهي وحدائق)

أحمد السقا (ممثل مصري)

مايكل ستيلس (ممثل أجنبي)



## Reading Time

Alexandria

SB page 23

### Introduction : مقدمة

Alexandria is an email about Mona's visit to Alexandria.

الإسكندرية هي رسالة بريد إلكتروني عن زيارة منى إلى مدينة الإسكندرية.

### Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. Mona is having a good time in Alexandria with her family.

١- تقضى منى وقتًا ممتعًا في مدينة الإسكندرية مع عائلتها.

2. Mona and her family visited Alexandria Library.

٢- زارت كلاً من منى وأسررتها مكتبة الإسكندرية.

3. They also visited Qaitbay Citadel.

٣- قاموا أيضًا بزيارة قلعة قايتباي.

4. They watched the actors rehearse.

٤- شاهدوا الممثلين يتدربوا على الأداء التمثيلي.

### A Listen and read along.

Alexandria

To : eman@egy.com

From : mona@egy.com

Subject : Alexandria

Hi, Eman!

I'm having a good time in Alexandria with my family. We visited Alexandria Library yesterday. Today we visited Qaitbay Citadel<sup>(1)</sup>. It was fun! In the afternoon, we went to a film studio<sup>(2)</sup>. They make all kinds of films at this studio.



Check  
Vocabulary

(1) قلعة قايتباي

(2) استوديو



Today they were making an adventure film <sup>(3)</sup>.  
 We watched the actors <sup>(4)</sup> rehearse <sup>(5)</sup>. It was so cool.  
 Then we talked to Ahmed El-Sakka (the film star).  
 He's really <sup>(6)</sup> nice.

Tonight we're going to eat dinner at a nice restaurant. We're  
 going to go to the beach tomorrow. I can't wait! See you on Sunday!

Love,

Mona

(3) فيلم مغامرة  
 (4) ممثلون  
 (5) يتدرب على أداء تمثيل  
 (6) حقا / بالمثل

## Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They went to a ..... studio in Alexandria to watch the actors rehearse.  
 a. program      b. cartoon      c. film      d. TV  
 (Cairo - El-Khalifa & El-Mokattam 2019)
- Noha visited Qaitbay ..... in Alexandria.  
 a. Beach      b. Citadel      c. Library      d. School
- We watched the actors ..... It was so cool!  
 a. rehearse      b. teach      c. eat      d. repeat
- They make all kinds of films at this .....  
 a. studio      b. hospital      c. park      d. beach
- We're going to visit Alexandria Library in the .....  
 a. night      b. afternoon      c. tonight      d. today
- We ..... a good time in Alexandria.  
 a. take      b. have      c. make      d. do
- Adel Emam is a film .....  
 a. actress      b. moon      c. star      d. studio
- Sindbad, the sailor البحر made many ..... in the sea.  
 a. boxes      b. adventures      c. accidents      d. cars

## B Listen and circle True or False.

- Mona was in Aswan.
- Mona went to the cinema.

True False  
 True False



3. Mona talked to a film star.

True False

4. Mona went to Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel.

True False

### C Read the question. Write the answer.

1. Where is Mona having a good time ?

2. What did she watch at the film studio ?

3. Who did she talk to at the film studio ?

She talked to Ahmed El-Sakka (the film star).

4. When did she visit Qaitbay Citadel ?

She visited Qaitbay Citadel today.

Florida

WB page 23

#### Introduction : مقدمة

"Florida" is an email about Bill's visit to Florida.

"فلوريدا" هي بريد إلكتروني عن زيارة "بيل" إلى فلوريدا.

#### Main Points : نقاط رئيسية

1. Bill visited Disney World yesterday. ١- زار بيل عالم ديزني أمس.

2. Bill also visited Universal Studios, a film studio.

٢- زار أيضا بيل إستديوهات عالمية منها استديو لتصوير الأفلام.

3. They make all kinds of films at this studio.

٣- إنهم يقومون بتصوير جميع أنواع الأفلام في هذا الاستديو.

اقرأ النص في صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

## Your Time

### A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الاسئلة ثم اجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. Do you ever sign autographs ?



2. Do you ever talk on the phone ?

3. Do your friends ever listen to music ?

4. Do you ever drive a sports car ?

**B Pair work. Write. Then ask your partner.**

و بالمثل في ثنائيات واكتب ثم اسأل زميلك.

\* Do you ever take a nap ?

	You	Your Partner
1. take a nap	I usually take a nap.	Dalia never takes a nap.
2. wear a wig		
3. listen to music		
4. talk on the phone		

always  
often  
sometimes  
hardly ever  
never  
usually

**C Review. Read and write the answers.**

ج. اقرأ واكتب إجابتك على الأسئلة من خلال معرفتك.

1. Do you ever see a film by yourself ?

2. Do you and your friends ever go to the beach ?

3. What did you do yesterday ?

4. What are you going to do tomorrow ?





## General

# Exercises

Reading & Your Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I love to swim. I'm going to the ..... in summer.

- a. peach      b. pavement      c. post office      d. beach

(Alexandria - Agami 2020)

2. We saw actors ..... a film studio.

- a. at      b. under      c. for      d. to

(Sohag - Juhayna 2018)

3. The actors always rehearse at the ..... (Beheira - Shubrakhit 2018)

- a. studio      b. school      c. home      d. hotel

4. He didn't ..... a sports car by himself.

- a. drives      b. drive      c. driving      d. drove

(Cairo 2016)

5. Mona is having a good ..... in Alexandria.

- a. club      b. library      c. time      d. star

6. The film star is going to ..... some autographs. (Beni Suef 2016)

- a. sign      b. signs      c. signed      d. signing

7. Mira ..... takes a nap.

- a. doesn't      b. didn't      c. usually      d. ever

8. We ..... Alexandria every summer.

- a. feed      b. visit      c. invent      d. bake

(Menofia 2017)

### 2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. actor - doctor - teacher - rehearse (Heliopolis 2019) ( ..... )

2. film - studio - museum - library (Cairo - New Cairo 2019) ( ..... )

3. library - citadel - beach - love ( ..... )

4. visited - watched - film - walked ( ..... )

5. Sunday - citadel - Friday - Monday ( ..... )



### 3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My name is Ali. Last Friday, I went to Alexandria with my family. We arrived at Alexandria at nine a.m. We visited Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. In the afternoon, we went to the sea. We played football on the beach. My father and mother got a sunburn. We had dinner at a nice restaurant. We enjoyed our time there.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They arrived in Alexandria in the .....  
a. afternoon      b. night      c. morning      d. evening
- Ali's father and mother got a ..... on the beach.  
a. present      b. haircut      c. meal      d. sunburn

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where did they go in the afternoon ?

.....

4. What did they visit in Alexandria ?

.....

(Gharbia - East Tanta 2018)

### 4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. visited - Library - yesterday - We - Alexandria.

(Dakahlia - Sherbeen 2020 / Dakahlia - East Mansoura 2020 /  
Cairo - New Cairo 2020 / Beni Suef - El Fashn 2020 / Fayoum 2020)

.....

2. Qaitbay - did - visit - you - When - Citadel ?

(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)

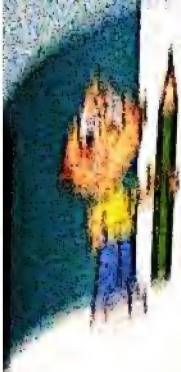
.....

### Quiz



اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات





# How to write

Unit 4

## Unit 4

### Step 1 Writing

Write a short story about a boy who has a car accident.

1. Do you ever drive a sports car?  
- Yes, I often drive a sports car.
2. Does he ever get a sunburn?  
- No, he never gets a sunburn.

### Step 2 Word practice

Write a short story about a boy who has a car accident.

Choose and write the word:

wig - have - nap



1. Do you ever  
an accident?



2. He always wears a

### Step 3 Grammar practice

Write a short story about a boy who has a car accident.

Write a short story about a boy who has a car accident.

Choose and write the word:

get - gets - never

1. No, he listens to music.
2. She usually a sunburn.



## HOW TO WRITE

### Step 4 Your idea web

• Choose and complete the idea web.

nap • phone • hardly • always

they ever talk on  
the ?

Yes, they talk  
on the phone.

Do

you ever take a  
?

No, I ever take  
a nap.

### Step 5 Your writing

• Read, cut and stick.

To : hamza@gmail.com  
From : zeln@gmail.com  
Subject : visiting a film studio

Cut & Paste here  
from page 295

#### Writing checklist

1. My sentences begin with a capital letter.
2. My sentences end with a full stop.
3. My words are in the correct order.





تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل واسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. going - I - late - for - lunch - to be - 'm.  
2. never - **Asmaa** - sunburn - a - gets.

فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة .
1	'm going to be	
2	(never) gets	

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. him - **Give** - message - , please - this.  
2. talk - **Don't** - phone - the - on.

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة .
1		
2		

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(i) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. will - **What** - back - be - he - time ?  
2. did - **Where** - you - yesterday - go ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة ؟
1	will			
2				

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. Ahmed - **May** - to - speak - I ?  
2. he - **Does** - a - ever - wear - wig ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة ؟
1			
2		(ever) wear	





# Test your skills

Unit 4

Write the words in the boxes in the correct form. Use the words in the box to help you.

## 1. Reading skill

Read the text and answer the questions.

The first part of the text is about the importance of the environment. It says that we should all do our bit to help protect it.

1. What is the main idea of the text?

It is about the importance of the environment.

It is about how we can help protect the environment.

## 2. Reading skill

Read the text and answer the questions.

The second part of the text is about the importance of the environment. It says that we should all do our bit to help protect it.

2. What is the main idea of the text?

It is about the importance of the environment.

It is about how we can help protect the environment.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

It is about the importance of the environment.

## 3. Reading skill

Read the text and answer the questions.

The third part of the text is about the importance of the environment. It says that we should all do our bit to help protect it.

The fourth part of the text is about the importance of the environment. It says that we should all do our bit to help protect it.

The fifth part of the text is about the importance of the environment. It says that we should all do our bit to help protect it.

The sixth part of the text is about the importance of the environment. It says that we should all do our bit to help protect it.

## 4. Reading skill

Read the text and answer the questions.

1. What is the main idea of the text?

2. What is the main idea of the text?

3. What is the main idea of the text?

4. What is the main idea of the text?



Read the text and answer the questions.

1. What is the main idea of the text?

2. What is the main idea of the text?

3. What is the main idea of the text?

4. What is the main idea of the text?

5. What is the main idea of the text?

6. What is the main idea of the text?

7. What is the main idea of the text?

8. What is the main idea of the text?

9. What is the main idea of the text?

10. What is the main idea of the text?





# Review on Unit 4

1. Conversation	2. Vocabulary	3. Language Focus
<p><b>Man</b> : Hello !</p> <p><b>Woman</b> : Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?</p> <p><b>Man</b> : He's not in right now.</p> <p><b>Woman</b> : What time will he be back ?</p> <p><b>Man</b> : I'm sorry. I don't know.</p> <p><b>Woman</b> : Can you take a message ?</p> <p><b>Man</b> : Sure. Who's calling ?</p> <p><b>Woman</b> : This is Salwa Kamel. I'm going to be late for lunch today. I'll see him at 1:00.</p> <p><b>Man</b> : Got it. What's your number ?</p> <p><b>Woman</b> : 35551839.</p> <p><b>Man</b> : Okay. I'll give him your message.</p> <p><b>Woman</b> : Thanks.</p> <p><b>Man</b> : You're welcome.</p>	<p>listen to music يستمع إلى الموسيقى</p> <p>sign autographs يوقع autógráfs</p> <p>wear a wig يرتدي باروكة (شعر مستعار)</p> <p>put on make-up يضع مكياج (استحضرات تجميل)</p> <p>get a sunburn يأخذ حمام شمس</p> <p>drive a sports car يقود سيارة رياضية</p> <p>talk on the phone يتحدث في الهاتف</p> <p>have an accident يتعرض لحادث</p> <p>make friends يكون صداقات</p> <p>take a nap يأخذ قيلولة (قسطاً من الراحة)</p>	<p><b>* Adverbs of frequency</b> أدوات التكرار always . دائماً usually . غالباً often . غالباً sometimes . أحياناً hardly ever جداً نادراً never أبداً</p> <p><b>* Present Simple Tense</b> الزمن البسيط</p> <p><b>* Formation:</b> التكوين</p> <p>التصريف الأول للتعليق صيغة إيجابيات</p> <p>I, We, You, They, اسم جمع</p> <p>التصريف الأول للتعليق صيغة إيجابيات</p> <p>He, She, It, اسم مفرد</p> <p>- I sometimes walk to school. - She never plays football.</p> <p><b>* Interrogative:</b> صيغة الاستفهام</p> <p>Do + I, we, you, they</p> <p>Does + He, she, it</p>



# Workbook On Conversation Time

page 16

**A. Unscramble and write. Then number the sentences in the correct order:**  
 : اكتب الجمل في الترتيب الصحيح

- 3 nCa ouy etak a segesam ?  
Can you take a message ?  
eruS. hos 'W laclgni ?  
Sure. Who's calling ?
- 1 elloH. yaM I keeps ot dmAeh, seaple ?  
Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?  
e 'Hs ton ni girth nwo.  
He's not in right now.
- 4 siTh si alSaw. ml' inggo to eb tela rof lchun dayot.  
This is Salwa. I'm going to be late for lunch today.  
oGt ti. Il' i vieg mlh oury gaseem.  
Got it. I'll give him your message.
- 2 hatW mite lliw eh eb bakc ?  
What time will he be back ?  
m' l' rrosy. I to'dn wonk.  
I'm sorry. I don't know.

**B. Look at A. Answer the questions:**

انظر الى الترتيب (A) واجب عن الاسئلة :

1. Who's calling ? Salwa is calling.
2. Does Ahmed talk to Salwa ? No, he doesn't.
3. Is Ahmed going to be late for lunch ? No, he isn't.  
Salwa is going to be late for lunch.



# Workbook On Word Time

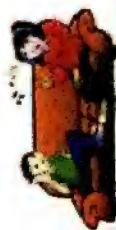
page 17

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**  
 : اكتب الحرف الصحيح من a, b, c او d

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ to a friend.  
a. talked b. did c. wore d. had
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ a wig.  
a. listened b. wore c. went d. talked
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ a sunburn.  
a. drove b. got c. talked d. played
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ a nap.  
a. wore b. put c. took d. did
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ on make-up.  
a. had b. put c. signed d. gave
6. The actor \_\_\_\_\_ autographs.  
a. drove b. wore c. signed d. talked
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ a sports car.  
a. talked b. wrote c. drove d. signed
8. She \_\_\_\_\_ to music.  
a. had b. did c. listened d. was
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone.  
a. listened b. talked c. took d. heard
10. We didn't \_\_\_\_\_ an accident.  
a. drive b. have c. put d. sign

**B. What do they like to do ? Look and write:**

ما الذي يحبون ان يفعلوه ؟



He likes to talk on the phone.  
She likes to listen to music.



### A. Read and match:

لدا جوج

1. never 2. usually 3. sometimes 4. hardly ever 5. always 6. often

50 % 0 % 80 % 100 % 70 % 10 %

### B. Look and write.

انظر واكتب :

1		2		3		4		5	

1. He often takes a nap.

2. She always gets a sunburn.

3. I hardly ever wear a wig.

4. They sometimes talk on the phone.

5. He never signs autographs.

### C. Look at Sally's schedule. Answer the questions:

انظر الى جدولي لدا جوج و اجاب :

Monday	nap	1. Does she ever take a nap?
Tuesday	nap, make up	2. Is she always making a nap?
Wednesday	nap, make up	3. Is she always making a nap?
Thursday	nap, make up	4. Is she always making a nap?
Friday	nap, make up	5. Is she always making a nap?

### Look at the chart. Write five questions and answers

انظر الى الجدول و اكتب 5 اسئلة و اجاب


1. Does he ever use a computer?  
Yes, he usually uses a computer.
2. Do they ever rent a video?  
No, they rarely ever rent a video.
3. Does he ever drive a sports car?  
Yes, he always drives a sports car.
4. Does she ever talk on the phone?  
Yes, she often talks on the phone.
5. Does he ever take a nap?  
Yes, he sometimes takes a nap.
6. Does he ever rent a video?  
Yes, he often rents a video.



## Workbook On Reading Time page 23

### A. Read. Fill in the blanks with the correct verb forms:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بصيغ الفعل الصحيحة :

rehearse go talk have make watch visit See make

To :  
From :  
Subject :

Hi, Kareem!

I'm having a good time in Florida! I visited Disney World yesterday. Today I visited Universal Studios, a film studio. They make all kinds of films. Today they were making an adventure film. I watched the actors rehearse a scene. Then I talked to Michael Stiles (the film star)

I'm going to go to a water park tomorrow. I can't wait!

See you on Sunday!

Your friend,

Bill

### B. Read and circle True or False: (True) أو (False) اقرأ وضع دائرة حول

1. Bill visited Disney World today. True False

2. Bill met a film star. True False

3. Bill watched the actors rehearse at the water park. True False

4. They were making an adventure film at the studio. True False

### C. Read the question. Write the answer: اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة :

1. Where is Disney World ?

Disney World is in Florida.

2. Who is Michael Stiles ?

Michael Stiles is a film star.

3. Why did Bill say "I can't wait" ?

Because he's going to go to a water park tomorrow.

## Workbook On Your Time page 24

### A. Read the question. Write the answer:

اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة :

Answers will vary.

1. Do you ever wear a wig ?

2. Do you ever get a sunburn ?

3. Do you ever listen to music ?

4. Do you ever put on make-up ?

5. Do you ever talk on the phone ?

6. Do you ever take a nap ?



### B. Write an email about a trip. Look at page 23 for help:

اكتب بريد إلكتروني عن رحلة. انظر إلى صفحة (٢٣) في كتاب الطالب لمساعدك على الكتابة.

Answers will vary.

Dear



# Exam Language Bank

Unit

4

## Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

اللقطة - مشهد الفلم - ١٩ - ٢٠ - ٢١ - ٢٢ - ٢٣ - ٢٤ - ٢٥ - ٢٦ - ٢٧ - ٢٨ - ٢٩ - ٣٠ - ٣١ - ٣٢ - ٣٣ - ٣٤ - ٣٥ - ٣٦ - ٣٧ - ٣٨ - ٣٩ - ٤٠ - ٤١ - ٤٢ - ٤٣ - ٤٤ - ٤٥ - ٤٦ - ٤٧ - ٤٨ - ٤٩ - ٥٠ - ٥١ - ٥٢ - ٥٣ - ٥٤ - ٥٥ - ٥٦ - ٥٧ - ٥٨ - ٥٩ - ٦٠ - ٦١ - ٦٢ - ٦٣ - ٦٤ - ٦٥ - ٦٦ - ٦٧ - ٦٨ - ٦٩ - ٧٠ - ٧١ - ٧٢ - ٧٣ - ٧٤ - ٧٥ - ٧٦ - ٧٧ - ٧٨ - ٧٩ - ٨٠ - ٨١ - ٨٢ - ٨٣ - ٨٤ - ٨٥ - ٨٦ - ٨٧ - ٨٨ - ٨٩ - ٩٠ - ٩١ - ٩٢ - ٩٣ - ٩٤ - ٩٥ - ٩٦ - ٩٧ - ٩٨ - ٩٩ - ١٠٠

telephone number	رقم الهاتف	sign autographs	يوقع أوتوغرافات
film studio	استديو تصوير	actor	ممثل
late	متأخر	rehearse	يقدر على أداء تمثيلي
wear a wig	يرتدي باروكة	film star	نجم سينمائي
take a nap	يأخذ غفوة	adventure film	فيلم مغامرات
get a sunburn	يأخذ حمام شمس		

## Language

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

القواعد - ١٩ - ٢٠ - ٢١ - ٢٢ - ٢٣ - ٢٤ - ٢٥ - ٢٦ - ٢٧ - ٢٨ - ٢٩ - ٣٠ - ٣١ - ٣٢ - ٣٣ - ٣٤ - ٣٥ - ٣٦ - ٣٧ - ٣٨ - ٣٩ - ٤٠ - ٤١ - ٤٢ - ٤٣ - ٤٤ - ٤٥ - ٤٦ - ٤٧ - ٤٨ - ٤٩ - ٥٠ - ٥١ - ٥٢ - ٥٣ - ٥٤ - ٥٥ - ٥٦ - ٥٧ - ٥٨ - ٥٩ - ٦٠ - ٦١ - ٦٢ - ٦٣ - ٦٤ - ٦٥ - ٦٦ - ٦٧ - ٦٨ - ٦٩ - ٧٠ - ٧١ - ٧٢ - ٧٣ - ٧٤ - ٧٥ - ٧٦ - ٧٧ - ٧٨ - ٧٩ - ٨٠ - ٨١ - ٨٢ - ٨٣ - ٨٤ - ٨٥ - ٨٦ - ٨٧ - ٨٨ - ٨٩ - ٩٠ - ٩١ - ٩٢ - ٩٣ - ٩٤ - ٩٥ - ٩٦ - ٩٧ - ٩٨ - ٩٩ - ١٠٠

1. I always<sup>(1)</sup> get up early.
2. Do<sup>(2)</sup> you ever<sup>(2)</sup> wear a wig?
3. Yes, I always wear a wig<sup>(3)</sup>.

### Check Language

- (1) أحد ظروف التكرار يأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي
- (2) صيغة الاستفهام بمعنى هل
- (3) الجواب المثبتة الكاملة في زمن المضارع البسيط

## Language Functions

وظائف لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

الوظائف - ١٩ - ٢٠ - ٢١ - ٢٢ - ٢٣ - ٢٤ - ٢٥ - ٢٦ - ٢٧ - ٢٨ - ٢٩ - ٣٠ - ٣١ - ٣٢ - ٣٣ - ٣٤ - ٣٥ - ٣٦ - ٣٧ - ٣٨ - ٣٩ - ٤٠ - ٤١ - ٤٢ - ٤٣ - ٤٤ - ٤٥ - ٤٦ - ٤٧ - ٤٨ - ٤٩ - ٥٠ - ٥١ - ٥٢ - ٥٣ - ٥٤ - ٥٥ - ٥٦ - ٥٧ - ٥٨ - ٥٩ - ٦٠ - ٦١ - ٦٢ - ٦٣ - ٦٤ - ٦٥ - ٦٦ - ٦٧ - ٦٨ - ٦٩ - ٧٠ - ٧١ - ٧٢ - ٧٣ - ٧٤ - ٧٥ - ٧٦ - ٧٧ - ٧٨ - ٧٩ - ٨٠ - ٨١ - ٨٢ - ٨٣ - ٨٤ - ٨٥ - ٨٦ - ٨٧ - ٨٨ - ٨٩ - ٩٠ - ٩١ - ٩٢ - ٩٣ - ٩٤ - ٩٥ - ٩٦ - ٩٧ - ٩٨ - ٩٩ - ١٠٠

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• May I speak to Ahmed, please?	• - He isn't in right now.
• What time will he be back?	• - I'm sorry. I don't know.
• Can you take a message?	• - Sure.
• What's your telephone number?	• - It's 35551839.





# Test 7 on Unit 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations  
المأثور على الوحدة مدمج من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات

## A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة. (استمع إلى الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. a. Yes, I usually listen to music.

b. Yes, I usually play music.

(Qalyoubia 2017 / Cairo - El-Basateen & Dar El-Salam 2019)

2. a. I'm sorry. I don't know.

b. I'm sorry. I can't tell you.

(Giza 2019)

3. a. Does he get a sunburn?

b. Does he wear a wig?

(Gharbia 2017)

4. a. What time will he be back?

b. What time will he arrive there?

(Alexandria - East 2019)

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل. Maha : Hello ! (1) ..... I speak to Nada, please ?

Rania : Hello ! She isn't in right now.

Maha : (2) ..... time will she be back ?

Rania : I'm (3) ..... I don't know.

Maha : Please, tell her that I will come (4) ..... tomorrow.

Rania : Okay. I will tell her.

(Giza 2017 / Cairo - Zeitoun 2019)

## B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It hardly ever ..... in summer.

a. rain

b. rained

c. is raining

d. rains

(الامتحان مجمع البحيرة ٢٠٢١)

2. I sometimes ..... a nap after school.

a. put on

b. wear

c. make

d. take

(Menofia 2017)

3. My uncle ..... a sports car every day.

a. drive

b. drives

c. driving

d. drove

(Ismailia 2014)

4. I usually ..... a sunburn when I go to Alexandria.

a. get

b. play

c. give

d. eat

(Menia 2015)



5. Does your sister wear her ..... ? (Cairo - El-Waili 2016)  
 a. cart                      b. wig                      c. make-up                      d. cat
6. Qaitbay ..... is in Alexandria. (South Sinai 2014)  
 a. Museum                      b. Theatre                      c. Citadel                      d. Restaurant
7. Does your brother ever ..... on the phone ?  
 (امتحان مجمع السويس ٢٠٢١)  
 a. talks                      b. talking                      c. talk                      d. talked
8. .... she ever take a nap ? (South Sinai 2014)  
 a. Does                      b. Do                      c. Is                      d. Are

**4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

1. wig - wear - make - help (Beni Suef 2014) ( ..... )
2. summer - winter - rain - spring (Cairo 2016) ( ..... )
3. library - hospital - museum - water (Kafr El-Sheikh 2017) ( ..... )
4. always - actor - usually - never ( ..... )
5. computer - dentist - teacher - actor (Cairo - El-Basaten & Dar El-Salam 2018)  
 (Damietta 2015) ( ..... )

**5 Read the passage and answer the questions:**

Last summer, I went with my family to Alexandria. We went there by train. We stayed at a big hotel. In the morning, we went to the beach where I swam and played with the sand. In the afternoon, we had lunch at a nice restaurant. We visited Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. We also went to the cinema and watched an adventure film. We had a good time in Alexandria.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. They went to the beach .....  
 a. in the morning                      b. in the afternoon  
 c. in the winter                      d. in the evening
2. They had lunch at .....  
 a. the library                      b. the cinema  
 c. a nice restaurant                      d. the citadel

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. How did they go to Alexandria ?

4. What did they visit there ?

(Aswan 2014 / Giza 2017 / Cairo - Hadaiq Al - Qubbah 2019)





## Writing

## 6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:

البريد الإلكتروني

Write an email to your friend Noura to tell her about your visit to Alexandria. Your name is Aya. Your email address is aya@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is noura@yahoo.com.

To :  
From :  
Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Cairo - Maadi 2019)

## 7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. he - What - will - time - back - be ?

(Beheira 2015/Port Said 2016/Dakahlia 2017 / Qalubia - Kanater 2018)

2. Yes, - listens - music - to - always - he.

(Dakahlia 2015)

## 8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. where did you go last Monday

(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)

2. yes we met him last Sunday.

(Suez 2020)





# Test 8 on Unit 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



استمع إلى الاختبار المأخوذة من

نموذج

## A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلوك وضع دائرة.

1. a. She watched a match.  
b. She watched the actors rehearse a scene.
2. a. No, thank you.  
b. Yes, please.
3. a. Do you ever have an accident ?  
b. Do you ever listen to music ?
4. a. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?  
b. Can I speak to Hany, please ?

نموض الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلوك واكمل.

Hany : Did you visit Alexandria ?

Samir : Yes, I (1) .....

Hany : Who did you (2) ..... with ?

Samir : I went with my (3) .....

Hany : (4) ..... did you visit there ?

Samir : I visited Alexandria Library.

## B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Actors always ..... autographs.  
a. take                      b. talk                      c. sign                      d. play
2. Ahmed Helmy is a famous film .....  
a. school                      b. star                      c. library                      d. park
3. I never put ..... make-up.  
a. for                      b. of                      c. in                      d. on
4. I hardly ..... wear a wig.  
a. always                      b. often                      c. ever                      d. never



5. She always talks on the .....  
 a. photo                      b. radio                      c. phone                      d. car
6. I never ..... an accident.  
 a. take                      b. do                      c. play                      d. have
7. I'll ..... him your message.  
 a. gives                      b. gave                      c. give                      d. giving
8. .... you ever listen to music ?  
 a. Has                      b. Is                      c. Do                      d. Does

**4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

1. friend - father - mother - sister ( )  
 2. library - studio - citadel - film ( )  
 3. get - put - have - Alexandria ( )  
 4. cat - train - sport - taxi ( )  
 5. doctor - baker - actor - beach ( )

**5 Read the passage and answer the questions:**

Aya is a student in our school. She is thirteen years old. She gets up at six o'clock. She walks to school every day because her house is near the school. At school, she learns many subjects. Her teachers like her because she gets high marks. Aya comes back home at two o'clock. She studies her lessons and goes to bed at ten o'clock.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Aya goes to school .....  
 a. by car                      b. on foot                      c. by bus                      d. by taxi
2. Aya is a .....  
 a. teacher                      b. doctor                      c. student                      d. nurse

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. When does Aya go to bed ?

4. Why do Aya's teachers like her ?



# C Writing

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"Visiting a film studio"

فكرت هبة في زيارة الاستوديو

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. always - have - I - breakfast - in - the morning.

2. Ali - take - Can - a message ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. nabil left Tanta to work in Cairo

2. Heba and Walaa want to visit alexandria



العب مع صديقك المعاصر لعبة Mo kids  
لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

متعة تعلم اللغة الانجليزية Enjoy Learning English

انزع البوستر من كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.





# Stop here!

## 1. Mini-test for Al-Azhar Students

اختبار سريع للطلاب

### 1 Write an email of FOUR sentences!

Write an email to your friend Nancy telling her about your visit to Alexandria. Your name is Fatma. Your email address is fatma@gmail.com and your friend's email address is nancy@gmail.com.

To : \_\_\_\_\_  
From : \_\_\_\_\_  
Subject : \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Punctuate the following sentence:

i don t know where ali is

## 2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

### Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sarah never ..... a wig.

a. wears

b. wear

c. wore

d. wearing

2. .... Ahmed going to be late for lunch ?

a. Does

b. Is

c. Did

d. Was





## Quiz 3 on Units 1, 2, 3 & 4

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (1, 2, 3, 4)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات السابقة.

### Model A

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



1. My bag is ..... than your bag.  
a. big                      b. bigger                      c. biggest                      d. the biggest
2. Ali sat in the sun and ..... a sunburn.  
a. got                      b. put                      c. drove                      d. did
3. He didn't drive a sports car by .....  
a. herself                      b. myself                      c. themselves                      d. himself
4. You can borrow a book from the school .....  
a. cinema                      b. park                      c. library                      d. station
5. She sometimes ..... to music.  
a. listening                      b. listen                      c. listens                      d. listened

### Model B

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



1. He ..... going to see a film.  
a. does                      b. are                      c. have                      d. is
2. In the museum, children under five can get in for .....  
a. cost                      b. fine                      c. free                      d. food
3. My brother isn't ..... right now.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. next                      d. of
4. We ..... a good time in Alexandria.  
a. take                      b. make                      c. do                      d. have
5. They went to a ..... studio to watch the actor rehearse.  
a. program                      b. cartoon                      c. film                      d. TV





الوحدة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.  
الوحدة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.  
يرى الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

### الاهداف العامة للوحدة : Aims of the Unit :

#### Listening/Speaking

- talk about the weather  
- التحدث عن الطقس ( حالة الجو )
- inquire after family  
- الاستفسار عن أفراد الأسرة
- ask about the frequency of actions  
- السؤال عن تكرار الأحداث
- identify speakers in a conversation  
- التعرف على المتحدثين في المحادثة

#### Reading

- read a newspaper advice column  
- قراءة عمود بإحدى الصحف لتوجيه النصائح

#### Vocabulary

- activities  
- التعرف على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة ببعض الأنشطة

#### Grammar

- adverbial phrases of frequency (once a day, twice a week, three times a month)  
- معرفة العبارات الظرفية للتكرار ( مرة في اليوم ، مرتان في الأسبوع ، ثلاث مرات في الشهر )
- Wh-questions with "How often ... ?"  
- تعلم الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ كم مرة .... ؟

### لا إلتقان الوحدة :

• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.

• كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة والأبحاث بنهاية الكتاب.  
Master your term داخل الكراسة التفاعلية.



# Conversation Time

SB page 25

WB page 25

## Key Vocabulary

degree	درجة	town	مدينة صغيرة
maybe	ربما / من المحتمل	'd better	من الأفضل
cloudy	غائم / مليد بالغيوم	= had better	
flu	الفلونزا	do better	
serious	خطير	weather	يتحسن الطقس

## Notes

1. I have the flu.
  2. It's getting cloudy. (المصدر)
  3. I'd better + inf. (المصدر)
  4. I'd better go home.
١. نستخدم الفعل (have) مع الأمراض بمعنى يصاب بـ.  
٢. نستخدم الفعل (get) مع كلمة (cloudy) بمعنى (تبدأ ان) او (تصبح).  
٣. أفضل أن ...

## Active Vocabulary

seat	مقعد (مكان للجلوس)	family	عائلة
cold	بارد	better	أفضل
today	اليوم	good	جيد
right	صحيح	tonight	الليلة
sister	أخت	fine	بخير

## Note

كلمة (family) تعامل معاملة المفرد عندما نتحدث عن العائلة ككل. وتعامل معاملة الجمع عند التحدث عن أفراد العائلة.

How is your family?

- They are fine.

## Important expressions and prepositions

1. Have a seat.	١. تفضل بالجلوس.
2. That's right.	٢. هذا صحيح.
3. That's wrong.	٣. هذا خطأ.
4. What's the weather like ?	٤. ما حالة الطقس ؟
5. It's getting cloudy.	٥. بدأت السماء تزداد غيوماً.



6. go home
7. Take care!
8. I'm sorry to hear that.

أ. يذهب المنزل  
ب. احذر / اهتم (بنفسك) / احترس  
ج. اسف لسماع ذلك.

Conjugation of verbs					
Regular Verbs			Irregular Verbs		
أفعال منتظمة			أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past	مضارع	ماضي	Past
start	يبدأ	started	hear	يسمع	heard
rain	يمطر	rained	do	يفعل	did
			have/has	يملك / يتناول	had
			take	ياخذ	took
			think	يعتقد	thought

## Exercise on Vocabulary

- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. hot - warm - hat - cloudy (Cairo - Ain Shams 2018) ( )
2. rain - sister - father - brother ( )
3. hear - think - degree - do ( )
4. start - right - good - serious ( )
5. seat - tonight - tomorrow - yesterday ( )

## In Town

- Characters شخصيات المحادثة



Kamal

Mr Samy

### Topic موضوع المحادثة

In today's conversation,  
Kamal and Mr Samy are friends.  
They are meeting in the park.  
They're talking together.

في محادثة اليوم، كمال والأستاذ سامي  
أصدقاء وهما يتقابلان في الحديقة ويتحدثان  
مع بعضهما البعض.



**A** Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.



**Kamal** : Hi, Mr Samy!

**Mr Samy** : Hello, Kamal. Have a seat.

**كمال** : مرحبًا أستاذ سامي!

**أ/ سامي** : مرحبًا كمال. تفضل بالجلوس.

**Kamal** : Thanks. Oh! It's cold today.

**Mr Samy** : That's right. It's 23 degrees!

**كمال** : شكرًا. ياه! الطقس بارد اليوم.

**أ/ سامي** : حقًا. درجة الحرارة اليوم ٢٣ درجة!

**Kamal** : Wow! Do you think it's going to rain?

**Mr Samy** : Maybe. It's getting cloudy.

**كمال** : ياه! هل تعتقد أنها ستمطر؟

**أ/ سامي** : ربما. فالسماء تزداد غيومًا.

**Mr Samy** : So, how's your family, Kamal?

**Kamal** : They're fine. But my sister has the flu.

**أ/ سامي** : إذن، كيف حال عائلتك يا كمال؟

**كمال** : بخير. ولكن أختي مصابة بالأنفلونزا.

**Mr Samy** : I'm sorry to hear that.

**Kamal** : It's not serious. She's doing better today.

**Mr Samy** : Good!

**أ/ سامي** : حزين لسماع ذلك.

**كمال** : الأمر ليس خطير. لقد تحسنت اليوم.

**أ/ سامي** : جيد!

**Kamal** : Look! It's starting to rain.

**Mr Samy** : I'd better go home. Take care, Kamal.

**Kamal** : Bye, Mr Samy.

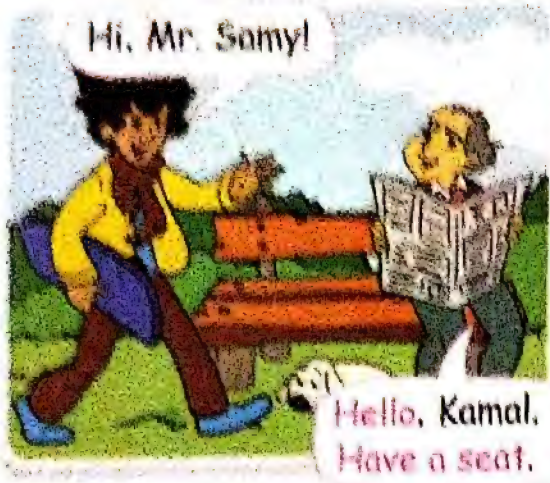
**كمال** : أنظر! بدأ الجو يمطر.

**أ/ سامي** : من الأفضل أن أذهب للمنزل. إعتنِ بنفسك يا كمال.

**كمال** : إلى اللقاء يا أستاذ سامي.



## Language Functions



1

- للتحية نستخدم :  
- Hi/Hello. أهلاً / مرحباً.
- لدعوة شخص ما للجلوس نستخدم :  
- Have a seat. تفضل بالجلوس.

2

- للتعبير عن حالة الطقس نستخدم :  
- It's + (حالة الطقس).
- It's cold today. الطقس بارد اليوم.
- عند الاتفاق مع شخص ما في الرأي :  
- That's right. هذا صحيح.



3



- للتعبير عن الدهشة نستخدم :  
- Wow !
- عند السؤال عن الرأي نستخدم :  
- Do you think... ? هل تعتقد ؟
- Do you think it's going to rain ? هل تعتقد أنها ستمطر ؟
- للرد بالاحتمالية (عدم التأكد):  
- Maybe. ربما.





4

• للسؤال عن أسرة شخص/ عائلة نستخدم :

- How is your family?

• للرد :

- عند الإبلاغ عن أخبار جيدة.

- They are fine.

- عند الإبلاغ عن أخبار سيئة.

- My sister has the flu.

5

• للتعبير عن التعاطف مع شخص لسماع

خبر سيئ نستخدم :

- I'm sorry to hear that.

- إني حزين لسماع ذلك.



6

• عند التحذير نستخدم :

- Take care!

- كن حذرًا!

• لوداع شخص نستخدم :

- Bye.

- مع السلامة.



### B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملاءك في المحادثة السابقة.





# General Exercises on Conversation Skills

• Understand

• Apply

• Evaluate

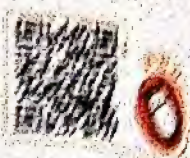
## 1 Listen and circle : *استمع الى صوت الى صوت*

*استمع الى صوت الى صوت*

1. a. It's cold.  
b. It's hot.
2. a. No, it doesn't.  
b. Yes, it is.
3. a. Do you think it's going to rain?  
b. Do you think it's going to be cloudy?
4. a. How is your sister?  
b. How is your family?

*(Shubra - East Zaqaziya)  
(Giza - South Giza)*

## 2 Listen and complete : *استمع الى صوت واكمل*



- Asmaa : Good morning, Amira.  
Amira : Good morning, Asmaa.  
Asmaa : How is your (1) ..... now?  
Amira : She is (2) .....  
Asmaa : Do you think that she had the (3) .....?  
Amira : You (4) ..... right.

*(Cairo - Zawla 2020 / Cairo - El-Hang 2020)*

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Hello, Kamal ! Have a .....  
a. pen                      b. book                      c. seat                      d. chair
2. It's a bad accident. I'm sorry ..... that.  
a. hear                      b. to hear                      c. heard                      d. hear to
3. Today is cold. It's 20 .....  
a. clouds                      b. degrees                      c. seats                      d. marks
4. It is ..... to rain. *(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020 / Menia - Deir Mawas 2020)*  
a. go                      b. gone                      c. going                      d. to go
5. I'd better ..... home now. *(Qalyoubia - Benha 2020)*  
a. go                      b. to go                      c. went                      d. going
6. I think it's going .....  
a. rain                      b. to rain                      c. raining                      d. rains

*(Bakahlia - Belbes 2018 / Giza - Al-Agouza 2017)*



2. My brother is ill. He has the

- a. seat      b. family      c. flu      d. degree  
 & it isn't      , She is doing better today.

- a. cloudy      b. cold      c. happy      d. serious

4. Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one!

1. hot - cold - warm - start

2. start - family - hear - go

3. home - park - zoo - flu

4. seat - sister - chair - table

5. Which - Who - family - Where

5. Write an email of SEVEN sentences:

Write an email to your friend Ali telling him that your sister is ill. She has the flu in the hospital. Your name is Hany and your email address is hany@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ali@yahoo.com.

To :  
 From :  
 Subject :

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

(Kafr El-Sheikh - Sedi Salem 2018 / Assiut - Abo Tig 2019)

6. Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Maybe. It s getting cloudy

(Cairo - Zewia 2020)

2. How s your family, Kamal

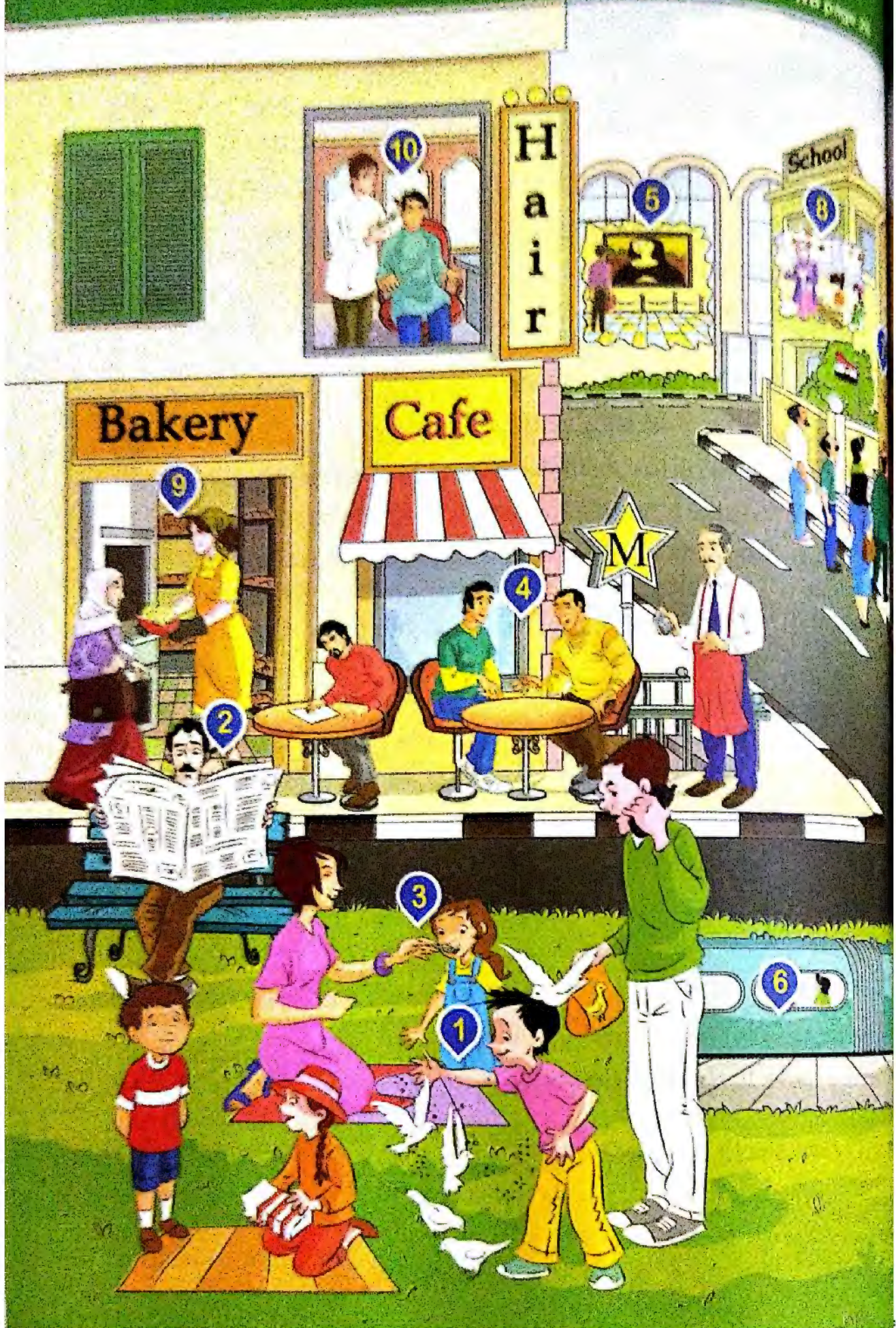
(Qalyoubia - Benha 2019)



# Word Time

SB page 26

WB page 34





## A Listen and repeat.

## Key Vocabulary

## Daily activities

## أنشطة يومية

1 feed the birds



يطعم الطيور

2 read a newspaper



يقرأ جريدة

3 take medicine



ياخذ/يتناول دواء

4 meet a friend



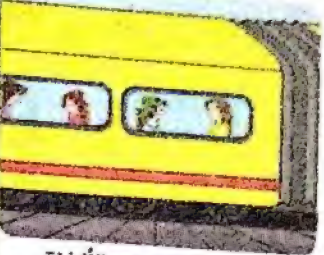
يلتقى بـ/يقابل صديقاً

5 visit a museum



يزور متحفاً

6 take the underground



يركب / يستقل مترو الأنفاق

7 give a speech



يلقي خطاب

8 take a maths test



يؤدي اختبار مادة الرياضيات

9 bake bread



يخبز خبزاً

10 get a haircut



يحلّق / يقصّ شعره

معك  
Ma3ak App

استمع



## Key Vocabulary

letter

رسالة message

café

مقهى apple pie

مطبخة تفاح

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs			Irregular Verbs		
أفعال منتظمة			أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past	مضارع	ماضي	Past
bake	يخبز	baked	feed	يطعم	fed
visit	يزور	visited	read	يقرا	read
			take	يأخذ	took
			meet	يقابل	met
			get	يحصل على	got
			write	يكتب	wrote
			give	يعطي	gave

## B Point and say the words. اشر الى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة وأذكرها.

- A : May I speak to Walid, please ?  
 B : I'm sorry. He's not in right now.  
 A : Can you take a message ?  
 B : Sure. Who's calling ?  
 A : This is Esam. I'll be late for lunch today. I'll see him at two o'clock.



## C Listen and point. استمع واشير الى المتحدثين.

- Boy : What are you doing ?  
 Girl : I'm writing a letter to Emiley Chen.





Waiter: How much water did you have?

Man: We had two bottles of water.

Waiter: How many pieces of apple pie did you have?

Man: We had two pieces of apple pie.



## Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ bread?

(Alexandria - Montazah 2020)

- a. go                      b. bake                      c. play                      d. come

2. Maged will \_\_\_\_\_ a speech tomorrow.

(Mena - Dear Mount 2020)

- a. give                      b. meet                      c. feed                      d. visit

3. In the park, children \_\_\_\_\_ the birds.

- a. bake                      b. tell                      c. feed                      d. wear

(The New Valley 2016 / Port Said 2017 / Assiut - Manshiet 2019)

4. My brother is going to \_\_\_\_\_ a haircut.

(Gharbia - East Tanta 2018)

- a. get                      b. take                      c. give                      d. bake

5. Alaa is going to take a maths \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday.

- a. speech                      b. test                      c. haircut                      d. medicine

6. I always take the \_\_\_\_\_ to my school.

- a. haircut                      b. test                      c. underground                      d. medicine

7. Reem is ill. She \_\_\_\_\_ medicine.

(Assiut 2016)

- a. reads                      b. eats                      c. bakes                      d. takes

Master your Term

استخدم المصطلح



استخدم المصطلح في الجملة التالية





## General Exercises on Word Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Evaluate

### 1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one.

1. English - maths - underground - Arabic

(Menofia - Shubin El-Kam 2018 / Alexandria - Borg El-Arabi 2019) (

2. message - April - May - June

(Sohag 2014) (

3. train - the underground - car - medicine

(

4. give - get - take - newspaper

(

5. baker - teacher - test - dentist

(

### 2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Ali is a student. He always gets up early from Sunday to Thursday to go to school. He takes the underground to school. He does his homework in the evening. On Fridays, he visits his friends and goes to the theatre to see shows. He sometimes watches football matches with his friends on Saturdays. They are always happy together.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali goes to school ..... days a week.

a. four

b. five

c. six

d. two

2. The opposite of "early" is ".....".

a. lazy

b. late

c. good

d. bad

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does Ali go to school ?

.....

4. When do they watch football matches ?

.....



## 3 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences: "Daily activities"

أكتب سبعة جمل في حياتي اليومية

## 4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. are - The students - test - taking - a maths.

2. birds - she - going to - the - Is - feed ?

(Cairo - El Sayda Zeinab 2018 / Behera - Etay Al - Baroud 2019) (Cairo - Helwan 2020)

## 5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i'll see him at two o clock.

2. Who did you meet in cairo

(Gharbia - El Santa 2020)



### Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

(WORD TIME) أهم المفردات اللغوية التي وردت في درس الـ

feed the birds

يطعم الطيور

visit a museum

يزور متحف

read the newspaper

يقرأ الجريدة

take the underground

يستقل المترو

take medicine

ياخذ الدواء

get a haircut

يقص شعره

meet a friend

يلتقى بصديق

give a speech

يلقي خطاب



SE pages 27&28 WFO pages 27&28

1944

1944

1990

1990

Legend:  $\Delta$  100

Legend:  $\Delta$  100

ثلاث مرات شهرياً

ثلاث مرات شهرياً

أربعة مرات سنوياً

أربعة مرات سنوياً



## B Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

How often do you read a newspaper?  
does she

I read a newspaper once a month.  
She reads

## Language Focus



مفك

### How often ... ?

كم مرة...؟

★ نستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث فعل ما فى زمن المضارع البسيط :

How often + **do** + I / you / they / we / اسم جمع + **Inf.** ?  
**does** + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + **مصدر الفعل** ?

◀ للإجابة نستخدم ظروف التكرار الآتية :

once	a day
twice	a week
three times	a month
four times	a year

always	sometimes
usually	hardly ever
often	never

◀ لاحظ أن : (a) نستخدم بمعنى (كل / فى كل) قبل (day - week - month - year)

ex. How often do you visit the museum ?

I visit the museum three times a year.



ex. How often does he take medicine ?

He takes medicine twice a day.





## Exercise on Language Focus

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He feeds the birds twice ..... day.  
a. some                      b. in                      c. a                      d. the
2. They ..... a newspaper once a month. (Giza - Al-Omranyah 2019)  
a. read                      b. reads                      c. are reading                      d. reading
3. I take the underground ..... a day.  
a. two                      b. twice                      c. second                      d. three  
(Qalyoubia 2017 / Menofia - Shibeena El-Kom 2018)
4. How ..... do you get a sunburn? - Twice a year.  
a. often                      b. much                      c. many                      d. old  
(Beheira 2017)
5. How often ..... you read a newspaper?  
a. do                      b. does                      c. are                      d. is
6. Salma visits the museum four ..... a year.  
a. times                      b. time                      c. twice                      d. once
7. My father ..... medicine twice a day.  
a. take                      b. takes                      c. taking                      d. don't take  
(Menia 2016)
8. I ..... a haircut twice a month.  
a. gets                      b. get                      c. getting                      d. doesn't get

### C Look at page (26). Listen and point.

انظر الى الصورة في كتاب الطالب صفحة ٢٦ ثم استمع واشر.

A: How often does he get a haircut?

B: He gets a haircut twice a month.





# Practice Time

**A** Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

How often do you visit a museum ? - I visit a museum four times a year.

How often do you get a haircut ?  
I get a haircut twice a month.

you/get a haircut ?  
twice a month



How often does she take medicine ?

She takes medicine three times a day.

she/take medicine?  
three times a day



How often does he feed the birds ?

he/feed the birds?  
once a day



How often does he meet his friends ?

he/meet his friends?  
twice a week





How often do you take the underground?

5 We take the underground five times a week.



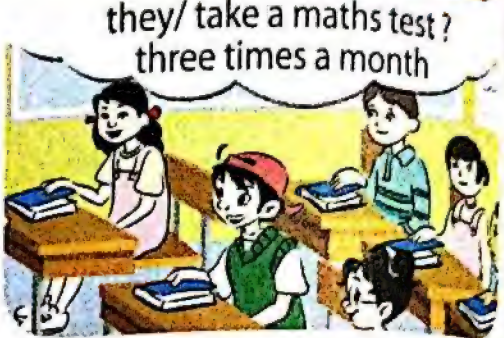
you/take the underground?  
five times a week

6 She bakes bread once a day.



she/bake bread?  
once a day

7 They take a maths test three times a month.



they/ take a maths test?  
three times a month

How often does he give a speech?

8 He gives a speech four times a year.



he/give a speech?  
four times a year

**B** Look at page (26). Practise with a partner.

نظر الى الصورة صفحة (٢٦) فى كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.



How often does she bake bread?



She bakes bread twice a day.





## General

# Exercises

Exercise 1: Choose the correct answer.

Exercise 2: Match the words with the pictures.

Exercise 3: Write the words in the correct column.

Exercise 4: Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

1. He is a **young** man. (young)
2. She is a **beautiful** girl. (beautiful)
3. He is a **short** man. (short)
4. She is a **tall** woman. (tall)
5. He is a **thin** man. (thin)
6. She is a **fat** woman. (fat)
7. He is a **black** man. (black)
8. She is a **white** woman. (white)
9. He is a **red** man. (red)
10. She is a **green** woman. (green)
11. He is a **blue** man. (blue)
12. She is a **purple** woman. (purple)
13. He is a **brown** man. (brown)
14. She is a **pink** woman. (pink)
15. He is a **grey** man. (grey)
16. She is a **yellow** woman. (yellow)
17. He is a **orange** man. (orange)
18. She is a **light blue** woman. (light blue)
19. He is a **dark blue** man. (dark blue)
20. She is a **light green** woman. (light green)
21. He is a **dark green** man. (dark green)
22. She is a **light purple** woman. (light purple)
23. He is a **dark purple** man. (dark purple)
24. She is a **light pink** woman. (light pink)
25. He is a **dark pink** man. (dark pink)
26. She is a **light grey** woman. (light grey)
27. He is a **dark grey** man. (dark grey)
28. She is a **light yellow** woman. (light yellow)
29. He is a **dark yellow** man. (dark yellow)
30. She is a **light orange** woman. (light orange)
31. He is a **dark orange** man. (dark orange)
32. She is a **light brown** woman. (light brown)
33. He is a **dark brown** man. (dark brown)
34. She is a **light black** woman. (light black)
35. He is a **dark black** man. (dark black)

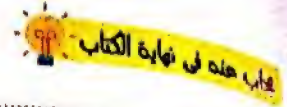
Exercise 5: Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one.

1. once - twice - one - three times (one - three times)
2. year - day - month - once (year - day - month)
3. bed - take - food - get (bed - take - food)
4. maths - cat - bus - the underground (maths - cat - bus)
5. three - medicine - four - five (three - four - five)



## 3 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Your school day"



## 4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. feeds - Heba - the - a day - once - birds.

(Cairo - Old Cairo 2020)

2. does - get - he - How - often - a haircut ?

(Qalyoubia - Obour 2020)

## 5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. how often do you visit the Egyptian Museum

2. He doesn t take my English books

MASTER  
YOUR TERM

تمكن من منهجك بالطريقة المناسبة لك



في اللغة الانجليزية

ملحق المعاصر

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



# Reading & Your Time

SB pages 29&30 WB pages 29&30

## Key Vocabulary

crazy	متحير / مجنون	older	أكبر سناً
little	صغير السن / قليل	fair	عادل / منصف
pest	شخص مزعج	attention	انتباه / اهتمام
bother	يضايق / يزعج	spend time	يقضي وقتاً
patient	صبور	without	بدون

## Notes

1. going crazy

يصبح حائراً

تستخدم كلمة (crazy) بمعنى مجنون ولكن في هذا الخطاب تأتي بمعنى شخص يشعر بالحيرة ويبحث عن حل لمشكلته.

2. without + (inf. + ing)

- He takes my things **without** asking.

## Active Vocabulary

problem	مشكلة	mum	ام
dear	عزيزي/عزيزتي	brother	أخ
because	لأن	but	لكن
all the time	طوال الوقت	grow up	يكبر / ينمو
friend	صديق	first	الأول
room	حجرة	some	بعض
things	أشياء	tell ... to	يخبر أن

## Notes

1. tell (someone) to + inf. المصدر

١. يستخدم بمعنى يخبر (شخص) أن ....

- Sarah **told me to** study hard.

2. have to + inf. المصدر

٢. يجب أن ....

- He **has to ask** first.

- يجب أن يطلب أولاً.

3. have a problem

٣. لديه / عنده مشكلة

- She **has a big problem**.

- هي لديها مشكلة كبيرة.



# Conjugation of verbs

تعريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		Irregular Verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
مضارع	ماضي	مضارع	ماضي
follow	followed	tell	told
ask	asked	spend	spent
love	loved	find	found
use	used	grow up	grew up
bother	bothered	go into	went into
borrow	borrowed	forget	forgot

## Important expressions and prepositions

1. follow me
2. It's not fair !
3. He wants your attention.
4. What can I do ?

١. يتبعني
٢. هذا ليس عدلاً !
٣. يريد جذب انتباهك.
٤. ما الذي أستطيع فعله ؟

## Reading Time

Dear Sarah

SB page 29

### Introduction : مقدمة

"Dear Sarah" is a letter from a newspaper. Someone wrote it to tell Sarah about a problem.

"عزيزتي سارة" هو خطاب من جريدة. كتبه شخص ما لكي يخبر سارة عن مشكلة.

### Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

- ١- تبلغ البنت ثلاثة عشر عامًا.
- ٢- هي لديها مشكلة كبيرة.
- ٣- أخوها شخص مزعج.
- ٤- هو يتتبعها طوال الوقت ودائمًا يضايقها.
- ٥- أخبرتها والدتها بأن تكون صبورة.



**Listen and read along.**

**Dear Sarah**

Dear Sarah,  
I am thirteen years old and I have a big problem. My little brother is a pest <sup>(1)</sup>! He follows me all the time and always bothers <sup>(2)</sup> me and my friends. He goes into my room and takes my things without asking. My mum tells me to be patient <sup>(3)</sup> because I am older. It's not fair <sup>(4)</sup>! What can I do?  
Going Crazy



Dear Crazy,

Your little brother loves you very much and wants your attention <sup>(5)</sup>. Spend time with him. Tell him he can use your things but he has to ask first. Help him find some friends. And don't forget, he will grow up <sup>(6)</sup>!  
Sarah

**Check Vocabulary**

- (1) شخص مزعج
- (2) يضايق / يزعج
- (3) صبور
- (4) عادل / منصف
- (5) انتباه / اهتمام
- (6) يكبر / ينمو

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have a big ..... . My little brother is a pest.  
a. time                      b. idea                      c. park                      d. problem
2. I'd like to be a teacher when I grow ..... .  
a. up                      b. at                      c. on                      d. of
3. Rodina is going to ..... a good time in Alexandria.  
a. spend                      b. follow                      c. ask                      d. eat
4. Your brother ..... you very much. (Gharbia 2020)  
a. adds                      b. starts                      c. colours                      d. loves
5. He always bothers us. He is a ..... . (Alexandria - Amreya 2020)  
a. best                      b. pest                      c. past                      d. post



**B** Listen and circle True or False.

1. Crazy is thirteen years old.
2. Crazy is younger than her brother.
3. Her brother bothers their mother.
4. Her brother borrows her things without asking.

True False  
True False  
True False  
True False

**C** Read the question. Write the answer.

1. What is Crazy's problem ?  
.....
2. Who does Crazy's brother bother ?  
.....
3. Who tells Crazy to be patient ?  
.....
4. What does Crazy's brother want ?  
.....

**Dear Sarah**

WB page 29

**Introduction : مقدمة**

"Dear Sarah" is a letter from a newspaper. Hanaa and Shaimaa wrote it to tell Sarah about Hossam who always bothers them.

"عزيزتي سارة" هو خطاب من جريدة كتبته هناء وشيما ليخبرا سارة عن حسام الذي دائما ما يضايقهم.

اقرأ النص في صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.



## Your Time

## A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم اجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. How often do you read a newspaper ?

2. How often do you get a haircut ?

3. How often do you visit a museum ?

4. How often do you feed the birds ?

## B Ask your classmates. Write their names and circle Yes or No.

أسأل أصدقائك واكتب أسماءهم وضع دائرة حول نعم أم لا.

Do you take medicine once a day ?

	Name	Yes / No
1. take medicine once a day	Does Nabil take medicine once a day ?	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
2. read a newspaper once a week		Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input type="radio"/>
3. get a haircut once a month		Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input type="radio"/>

## C Review. Read and write the answers.

راجع. اقرأ واكتب إجابتك على الأسئلة من خلال معرفتك.

1. Do you ever visit a museum ?

2. Do you like feeding the birds ?

3. How often do you give a speech ?

4. Is there an underground in your town ?





## General

# Exercises

Reading & Your Time

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one!

1. pest - car - crazy - patient (Sharkia - Mashtoul El Souq 2019) ( )
2. follow - parents - ask - take ( )
3. bother - room - school - park ( )
4. pest - brother - mother - sister ( )
5. grow up - spend - fair - forget ( )

### 2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Hi, I'm Adel. I follow my older brother Ashraf and his friends all the time. One day, Ashraf invited his friend Kareem to play. When Ashraf and Kareem went outside to play basketball, I went to Ashraf's room and took a comic book.

When I finished reading, I followed Ashraf and Kareem to listen to music. Ashraf said, "You always bother me! You are a pest." I didn't know what a pest was. I found my mum and asked "What's a pest?" My mum said, "A pest bothers people." Then I asked, "Am I a pest?"

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Adel went to Ashraf's room and took a/an ..... book.  
a. comic      b. Arabic      c. English      d. science
2. A pest ..... people.  
a. helps      b. likes      c. bothers      d. plays

#### B. Answer the following:

3. When did Adel follow Ashraf and Kareem ?

4. What did Ashraf call Adel ?



### Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

اكتب رسالة بريد الكتروني مكونة من سبع جمل

Write an email to your friend Asmaa telling her about your little sister Magy who is a pest. Your name is Sara Ramy. Your email address is sararamy@gmail.com and your friend's email address is asmaahmed@hotmail.com.

To :  
From :  
Subject :

(Giza-Al-Haram 2018)

### Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. **SB** Crazy's - is - problem - What ?

(Qena 2020)

2. a pest - My little - is - brother - bothers me - and. (Cairo - Heliopolis 2019)

### Punctuate the following sentences:

1. is omnia older than Basma?

(Aswan 2020)

2. my little brother is a pest

(Gharbia 2020)





# How to write

## Unit 5

### Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تمرين الطالب للكتابة.  
يقوم الطالب بكتابة هذه الجمل التي تعمل على استرجاع المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

1. How often do you visit a museum ?  
- I visit a museum four times a year.
2. How often does he feed the birds ?  
- He feeds the birds once a day.

### Step 2 Word Practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدريب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة :

speech - friend - get



1. How often do you .....  
a haircut?



2. He gives a ..... once a day.

### Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدريب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

• Choose and write the word :

two - does - twice

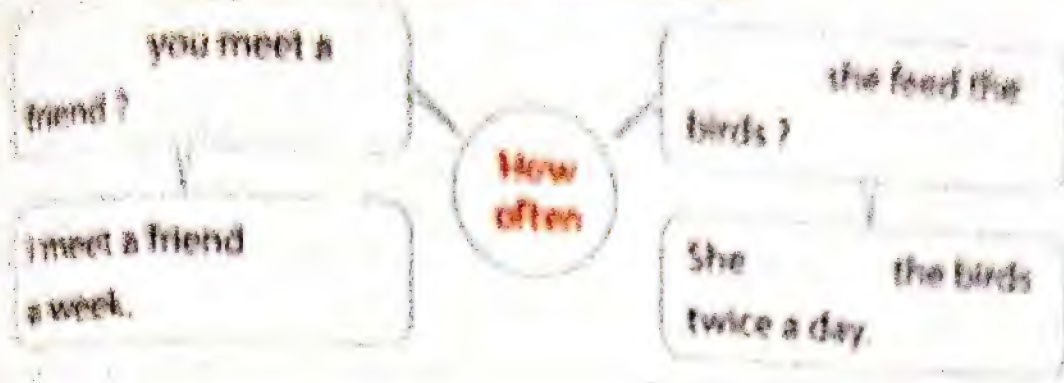
1. How often ..... she take medicine ?
2. We take a maths test ..... a week.



## 8 Your idea web

Choose and complete the idea web.

do - feeds - does - once



## 9 Your writing

Read, cut and stick.

Read, cut and stick.

To : nada@gmail.com  
From : maha@gmail.com  
Subject : My daily activities

Cut & Paste here  
from page 295

### Writing checklist

1. My sentences begin with a capital letter.
2. My sentences end with a full stop.
3. My words are in the correct order.





تعليم كيف تكون وترتب جمل واسئلة.  
الجملة الخبرية

1. today - doing - is - better - **She**.
2. meets - **He** - friend - once - his - a week.

فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1	is doing	
2		

الجملة الأمرية

1. take - asking - without - things - **Don't** - my.
2. seat, - **Have** - a - Kamal.

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1	take	
2		

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال ب (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. you - the - do - feed - birds - **How often** ?
2. does - **What** - her - want - brother ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1				
2		her brother		

(ب) السؤال ب (هل .. ؟)

1. you - think - rain - going to - it's - **Do** ?
2. Salma - **Does** - a - take - test - maths ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1			
2			





# Test your skills

## Unit 5

If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

● غير جيد ● جيد

● غير جيد ● جيد

### 1 Listening skill

Listen to the conversation.  
Listen and tick (✓).

اسلمع إلى المحادثة من الصفحة  
التالية. اسلمع وضع علامة (✓) أمام  
الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Maybe. It's getting cloudy.  
☐ How is your family?  
☐ Do you think it's going to rain?

### 2 Reading skill

Read and tick (✓).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة  
الصحيحة.

- 2 Which word goes in the  
sentence?  
He always bothers us. He is a

- ☐ pest  
☐ best

### 3 Writing skill

Write two sentences about  
your little brother.

اكتب جملتين عن أخيك الصغير.

### My Spelling Test

Look and write.

1. ....



2. ....



3. ....



4. ....



Self evaluation

التقييم الذاتي

My work in Unit is:

● ممتاز

● جيد جدا

● جيد

● غير جيد



Color



مراجعة على Unit 5 في ورقة واحدة

254

1. Conversation	2. Vocabulary	3. Language Focus
Kamal : Hi, Mr Samy! Mr Samy : Hello, Kamal. Have a seat.	bake bread يخبز خبزاً read a newspaper يقرأ جريدة	* Adverbial phrases of frequency عبارات الظرفية للتكرار
Kamal : Thanks. Oh! It's cold today. Mr Samy : That's right. It's 23 degrees!	meet a friend يلتقي بر / يتقابل صديقاً take a maths test يأخذ / يؤدي اختبار رياضيات	once a day / twice a week / three times a month / five times a year / always / often / hardly ever / never
Kamal : Wow! Do you think it's going to rain ? Mr Samy : Maybe. It's getting cloudy. So, how's your family, Kamal ?	feed the birds يطعم الطيور take medicine يأخذ / يتناول دواء	How often + $\frac{do}{does}$ + فاعل + $inf.$ + مفعول مصدر الفعل السؤال عن عندة مرات القيام بالفعل تستخدم
Kamal : They're fine. But my sister has the flu. Mr Samy : I'm sorry to hear that. Kamal : It's not serious. She's doing better today. Mr Samy : Good!	visit a museum يزور متحف take the underground يستقل مترو الانفاق give a speech يلقي خطاب get a haircut يحصل على قصة شعر / يقص شعره	- How often do you visit the Pyramids ? - I visit the Pyramids once a year.
Kamal : Look! It's starting to rain. Mr Samy : I'd better go home. Take care, Kamal. Kamal : Bye, Mr Samy.		



# Review on Unit 5









### A. Look and write:

1. Hello, Kamal. Have the sit.  
Hello, Kamal. Have a seat.
2. Thanks. Oh! It cold tonight.  
Thanks. Oh! It's cold today.
3. That's wrong. It's 23 degree !  
That's right. It's 23 degrees!
4. Wow! Do you know it's wants to rain ?  
Wow! Do you think it's going to rain ?
5. Maybe. It's going cloudy.  
Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
6. So, what's your family, Kamal ?  
So, How's your family, Kamal ?
7. They're fine. But my sister have the flu.  
They're fine. But my sister has the flu.
8. I'm happy to hear that.  
I'm sorry to hear that.
9. It's no serious. She's doing better yesterday.  
It's not serious. She's doing better today.



**A. Look and write:**

- |    |  |                     |
|----|--|---------------------|
| 1. |  | read a newspaper... |
| 2. |   | give a speech       |
| 3. |  | visit a museum      |
| 4. |   | meet a friend       |
| 5. |  | bake bread          |
| 6. |   | take a maths test   |

**B. What are they going to do ? Look and write :**



1. .... She's going to feed the birds.
2. .... She's going to take medicine.
3. .... He's going to get a haircut.
4. .... They're going to take the underground.



































A. Use the code to write the words:

1 = once 2 = twice 3 = three times 4 = four times  
D = a day W = a week M = a month Y = a year

1. 1 D = once a day 2. 3 W = \_\_\_\_\_  
3. 2 M = \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 3 Y = \_\_\_\_\_  
5. 4 D = \_\_\_\_\_ 6. 2 W = \_\_\_\_\_

B. Look at Heba's schedule. Write True or False:

Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.
 	 	 	 	 	 	 
						
						

 = feed the birds  
 = take the underground  
 = take medicine  
 = bake bread

1. Heba feeds the birds once a week. True  
 2. Heba takes medicine three times a day. False  
 3. Heba bakes bread three times a week. True

C. Look at B. Read and write:

1. How often does she take medicine?  
 She takes medicine \_\_\_\_\_  
 2. How often does she take the underground?  
 She takes the underground \_\_\_\_\_

A. Look and write:

Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.
						
						
						
						

 = visit a museum  
 = get a haircut  
 = do the laundry  
 = give a speech  
 = read a newspaper  
 = go to a restaurant

1. How often does he do the laundry?  
 2. How often does he visit a museum?  
 3. How often does he get a haircut?  
 He gets a haircut once a month.  
 4. How often does he read a newspaper?  
 He reads a newspaper five times a week.  
 5. How often does he give a speech?  
 He gives a speech once a week / four times a month.  
 6. How often does he go to the restaurant?  
 He goes to the restaurant three times a week.



### A. Read.

Dear Sarah

Dear Sarah,

There is a pest in our class at school. His name is Hosam. He follows us all the time and always bothers us. He takes our things without asking. Our teacher told us to be patient. It's not fair! What can we do?  
Hanaa and Shaimaa.

Dear Hanaa and Shaimaa,

Hosam bothers you because he wants your attention. Spend time with him. Help him find some friends.  
Sarah



### B. Read the question. Write the answer:

- Who's a pest?  
Hosam is a pest.
- Who told Hanaa and Shaimaa to be patient?  
Their teacher told them to be patient.
- Why does the pest bother Hanaa and Shaimaa?  
Because he wants their attention.

### C. Read and match:

1. Hosam	- told them to be patient.	(4)
2. Sarah	- takes their things without asking.	(6)
3. Hanaa and Shaimaa	- says, "Help him find some friends."	(2)
4. Their teacher	- told them to spend time with Hosam.	(5)
5. Sarah	- is in Hanaa and Shaimaa's class.	(1)
6. Hosam	- say, "It's not fair!"	(3)

### A. Read and check:

Answers will vary.

When do you do these things?



Activity	Morning	Afternoon	Night
brush my teeth			
eat			
use a computer			
read a newspaper			
take a nap			
call a friend			

### B. Read the question. Write the answer:

Answers will vary.

How often do you get a haircut?



How often do you bake bread?



How often do you wash your hair?



How often do you see a film?





# Exam Language Bank

اهم النماذج (النوع) اختيار في كل وحدة والتي تستخدم من خلالها للتفاعل مع اختبار الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالامتحان.

Unit  
5

## 1. Vocabulary

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

الامتحان - الجزء ٢٠١٩ - امتحان مجمع أسبوت - مملكة ٢٠٢١

degree	درجة	get a haircut	يقطع شعره
weather	الطقس	bake bread	يخبز خبزا
cloudy	غائم - ملبد بالغيوم	give a speech	يقدم خطاب
take medicine	يأخذ دواء	little	بعض الشيء
feed the birds	يطعم الطيور	pest	شخص مزعج
visit a museum	يزور متحفًا	attention	انتباه / اهتمام
take a maths test	يؤدي اختبار مادة الرياضيات		

## 2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

الجزء - الامتحان ٢٠١٧ - امتحان مجمع أسبوت - مملكة ٢٠٢١

1. How often <sup>(1)</sup> do you visit the museum ?
2. I visit the museum three times a year <sup>(2)</sup>.

### Check Language

(1) كم مرة... للسؤال عن عدد المرات

(2) ظرف التكرار

## 3. Language Functions

وظائف لغوية هامة ورد بعضها في امتحانات سابقة :

الجزء - الامتحان ٢٠١٨ - المرج ٢٠٢٠

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• Do you think it's going to rain ?	- Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
• How's your family ?	- They're fine. But my sister has the flu.
• Do you think that she had the flu ?	- Yes, I think so. But she is doing better today.



# Test 9 on Unit 9

Understand

Create

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations  
مجموع من امتحانات المحافظات والديارات

## A Listening



1. Listen and circle: *أصلي على الدابة التي أريد*

1. a. She takes medicine twice a week.  
b. She takes medicine three times a day.
2. a. Maybe. It's getting cold.  
b. Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
3. a. How is your sister?  
b. How is your mother?
4. a. How often do you get a haircut?  
b. How often do you feed the birds?

(Qalyubia 2017)

(Menofia 2014)

(Gharbia 2015)

(Alexandria 2017 / Cairo - Mataria 2018)

2. Listen and complete: *أصلي على الدابة التي أريد*

Kamal : Hi, Mr Samy,

Mr Samy : Hello, Kamal. Have a seat. How's your (1) .....

Kamal : They're fine. But my sister has the (2) .....

Mr Samy : I'm sorry to hear that. Is it (3) .....

Kamal : No, it isn't. She's doing (4) ..... today.

Mr Samy : Good!

(Alexandria 2015 / Qena 2019)

## B Reading

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She ..... bread once a day. (Alexandria 2015)  
a. feeds                      b. reads                      c. meets                      d. bakes
2. "A ....." is someone who bothers people. (Qalyubia 2014)  
a. text                      b. nest                      c. best                      d. pest
3. I'd better ..... home. (Dakahlia - Belgas 2018 / Behara - El-Mahmoudia 2019)  
a. go                      b. to go                      c. going                      d. goes



1. How often does she visit a museum?  
a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting
2. She's coming today.  
a. good b. better c. best d. bad
3. How do you give a speech?  
a. cut b. much c. often d. many
4. To help me with my problem, my mother tells me to be  
a. patient b. little c. older d. pest
5. I take medicine a day.  
a. five b. twice c. to d. too

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. February - March - Monday - December  
(January - November 2018) ( )
2. eat - with - write - follow  
(March 2018) ( )
3. summer - rain - winter - spring  
(June 2018) ( )
4. crazy - speech - old - cloudy  
(November 2017) ( )
5. dance - once - twice - three times  
(August 2018) ( )

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

On Thursday, there was a baking class in our school. Alyaa made an apple pie. The next day, she took the pie, some pineapple juice and a cone of ice cream and went to the park. She ate, played and took a nap near the lake. She fed the birds and hurt her finger, but it wasn't serious. She went back home and she was happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Alyaa baked a / an on Thursday.  
a. orange juice b. apple pie c. bread d. cake
2. The next day, she went to the  
a. park b. school c. baking class d. restaurant



**B. Answer the following questions:**

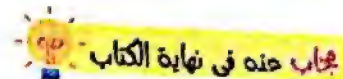
3. What did she feed ?

4. Where did Alyaa take a nap ?

(Suez 2014)

**C Writing****6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:**

"At the park"



(Matrouh 2017 / Cairo - Al-Mataria 2018 / Souhag - Tema 2018 / Kafr El-Shiekh - Reyad 2019)

**7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**1. take - medicine - How - often - you - do ?

(Qena - Dshna 2020 / Menia - Samalout 2020)

2. a - month - I - a haircut - get - twice.**8 Punctuate the following sentences:**

1. it is cold today

(Cairo - New Cairo 2020)

2. Can i help you carry this heavy bag

(Alexandria - Amereya 2020)





## A Listening

استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

استمع إلى المعلم في لعبة الكمال

1

1. a. He's fine, thanks.  
b. He's fine, thank you.
2. a. Noha bothers her sister.  
b. Noha bothers her friend.
3. a. How's your family, Kamal?  
b. How's your sister, Mona?
4. a. How often do you read the newspaper?  
b. How often do you take a nap?

2

استمع إلى معلمك واكمل

Ahmed : Oh! It's cold today.

Samy : That's right. It's 23 (1) !

Ahmed : Wow! Do you (2) It's going to rain?

Samy : Look! It's starting to rain.

Ahmed : How can I (3) back home?

Samy : You can (4) a taxi.

## B Reading

3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He ..... the park once a month.  
a. visited      b. visiting      c. visits      d. visit
2. How ..... do you read a newspaper?  
a. many      b. high      c. old      d. often
3. It's ..... rain. let's go.  
a. go      b. going to      c. goes      d. went
4. My father reads the ..... every morning.  
a. address      b. pictures      c. newspaper      d. films



5. In the park, children ..... the birds.  
a. feed                      b. take                      c. bake                      d. tell
6. She tells her sister to be ..... because she is older.  
a. crazy                      b. big                      c. small                      d. patient
7. Hoda loves you and ..... your attention.  
a. wants                      b. want                      c. wanted                      d. wanting
8. Mona is ill. She has the .....  
a. meat                      b. flu                      c. ball                      d. pest

**4 Circle the odd word and replace it with**

1. pest - car - patient - crazy
2. music - art - English - serious ( ..... )
3. wig - wear - make - take ( ..... )
4. father - mother - bother - sister ( ..... )
5. May - March - July - Ali ( ..... )

**5 Read the passage and answer the questions**

There is a pest in Hanaa's class at school. Her name is Aya. She follows Hanaa all the time and always bothers her. Her teacher, Shaimaa told her to be patient. It's not fair! What can she do? Her friend Sara told her that Aya bothers her because she wants her attention. She told Hanaa to spend time with her and find some friends.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .... is a pest.  
a. Hanaa                      b. Aya                      c. Shaimaa                      d. Sara
2. Her teacher told her to be .....  
a. angry                      b. happy                      c. patient                      d. fair

**B. Answer the following:**

3. What did Sara tell Hanaa to do ?

4. Why does the pest bother Hanaa ?





## Writing

## 6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

أكتب رسالة إلكترونية

Write an email to your friend Ahmed to tell him about your family. Your name is Hatem. Your email address is hatem@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@yahoo.com.

To : \_\_\_\_\_  
From : \_\_\_\_\_  
Subject : \_\_\_\_\_

## 7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. often - you - How - see - do - a film ?

2. us - told - Our teacher - be - patient - to.

## 8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. How s your family, Hend

2. he doesn t take the underground on Sunday.





# Stop here!

## 1. Mini-test for Al-Azhar Students

اختبار مُصَغَّر للآزهر الشريف

### 1 Read and circle:

1. How often do you read a newspaper?

a. I read a newspaper once a day.

b. I take a nap once a day.

2. What is the weather like today?

a. It's 23 degrees.

b. It's cold.

3. He's fine, thank you.

a. How is your family?

b. How is your father?

### 2 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

Guiding words:

meet – park – talk – football

.....

.....

.....

.....



## 2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

### • Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. you - think - Do - going - it's - rain - to ?

2. town - your - in - Is - there - an underground ?





## Quiz 4 on Units 1, 2, 3, 4 & 5

اختر (أكتب) على الوحدات (1, 2, 3, 4 و 5)

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه  
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه

### Model A

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Adam walked to school ..... himself.  
a. from                      b. of                      c. by                      d. under
- At the restaurant, you can choose food from a .....  
a. menu                      b. table                      c. desk                      d. pot
- John Montagu ..... the sandwich.  
a. went                      b. read                      c. did                      d. invented
- Last week, Farah ..... an accident.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. had                      d. having
- Do you want to ..... some bread ?  
a. go                      b. bake                      c. meet                      d. come

### Model B

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I'd better ..... home now.  
a. go                      b. to go                      c. went                      d. going
- I'll ..... you my number.  
a. go                      b. do                      c. give                      d. call
- You need to get a ..... because your hair is very long.  
a. sandwich                      b. box                      c. drink                      d. haircut
- How ..... fruit salad did you have ?  
a. much                      b. tall                      c. many                      d. old
- I'm going to the ..... as I have a toothache.  
a. supermarket                      b. dentist                      c. grocer                      d. bank





# Review Conversation Time

SB page 31

## Key Vocabulary

video	فيديو
special	مستطبة / مستطبة
exhibition	معرض
photograph	مطابق - مطابق
order	مطابق من
a cup of	كوب من
a glass of	الوانج من
kinds of	مطعم بالمطال
bored	مذكرات يومية
diary	

## A Listen and circle the correct picture. استمع وضع دائرة حول الصورة الصحيحة.

1. Clerk : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you ?

Kareem : Hi, Do you have a special exhibition today ?

Clerk : Yes, we do. It's an exhibition of old photographs of Cairo.

Kareem : Are there any tours ?

Clerk : Yes. Tours are at 11:00, 2:30 and 5:00.

Kareem : Thanks for your help.

Clerk : You're welcome.

a. NEW CAIRO

Photo	
Exhibition	
11:00 2:30 5:00	

b. NEW CAIRO

Photo	
Exhibition	
11:00 2:30 5:00	

c. NEW CAIRO

Photo	
Exhibition	
11:00 2:30 5:00	



2. **Waiter** : Hello. Are you ready to order ?

Mrs Samy : I think so. I'll have a bowl of chicken soup.

**Waiter** : I'm sorry. We don't have chicken soup today. We have garlic soup.

Mrs Samy : Oh, I don't like garlic. Hmm. What's today's special ?

**Waiter** : Spaghetti and meatballs.

Mrs Samy : Sounds good. I'll have spaghetti and orange juice.

**Waiter** : Okay. Spaghetti and meatballs, and a glass of orange juice. I'll be right back.

a.



b.



c.



3. **Baker** : Hi. Can I help you ?

Man : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have ?

**Baker** : We have lemon, peach and cherry.

Man : How about apple ? I love apple pie.

**Baker** : Sorry, we're out of apple.

Man : Oh ! How much are the cherry pies ?

**Baker** : They're 10 L.E each.

Man : Okay, I'll take a cherry pie.

**Baker** : Great!

a.



b.



c.





4. **Mrs Samy** : Hello ?

Woman : Hello. May I speak to Mona, please ?

**Mrs Samy** : I'm sorry. She's not in right now.

Woman : Can you take a message ?

**Mrs Samy** : Sure. Who's calling ?

Woman : This is Mrs. Doaa at the New Cairo Library. We have sports in Cairo now.

**Mrs Samy** : Is that a book ?

Woman : No, It's a video.

**Mrs Samy** : Okay. I'll give her the message.

a.



b.



c.



5. **Samy** : Hi, Kareem!

Kareem : Hi, Samy. How are you ?

**Samy** : Fine, thanks. How are you ?

Kareem : I'm good. How's your family ?

**Samy** : My mother and sister are sick.

Kareem : I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter ?

**Samy** : They have the flu.

Kareem : Oh. Is your brother sick, too ?

**Samy** : No, he isn't sick.

Kareem : Good!

**Samy** : Well, I'll see you later, Kareem!

Kareem : Okay. Bye!





**B** Listen and circle the correct answer.  
 قطع دائرة حول الاجابة الصحيحة.

1

**Clerk** : Cairo Theatre. How can I help you ?

**Mona** : Hi. What time is the film today ?

**Clerk** : 4:15.

**Mona** : 4:50 ?

**Clerk** : No. 4:15.

**Mona** : Oh. Thank you.

4:10

4:15

4:50

2

**Waiter** : Hello. Are you ready to order ?

**Mrs Samy** : I think so. I'll have a piece of apple pie and a glass of orange juice.

**Dr Samy** : I'll have a piece of apple pie, too, and a cup of coffee.

**Mona** : I'll have a piece of apple pie and a glass of orange juice.

**Waiter** : All right. That's three pieces of apple pie, one glass of orange juice, and two cups of coffee.

**Mrs Samy** : No, no. We want two glasses of orange juice and one cup of coffee.

**Waiter** : Okay. I'll be right back.

2 glasses

3 glasses

4 glasses



- Baker** : Hi. Can I help you ?  
**Woman** : Yes, please. I'd like a lemon ple and an apple ple.  
**Baker** : Okay. That's 30 pounds.  
**Woman** : 13 pounds ?  
**Baker** : No, 30 pounds.  
**Woman** : Okay. Here you are.  
**Baker** : Thank you.

13

33

30

- Mrs Samy** : Hello !  
**Girl** : Hello. May I speak to Mona, please ?  
**Mrs Samy** : I'm sorry. She's not in right now.  
**Girl** : Can you take a message, please ? This is Emiley Chin.  
 My number is 987-9876.  
**Mrs Samy** : Did you say 987-9867 ?  
**Girl** : No, it's 987-9876.  
**Mrs Samy** : Got it. I'll give her the message.

987-9867

978-9876

987-9876

### Quick Look



راجع منهجك فى ساعة واحدة

اللع البوستر من كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية





## Review Sokkar's Diary

88 page 37

**A** Listen and read along. Then look at the pictures and write the days of the week.

### Sokkara's Diary

Day: **Monday** .....

Today, I went to a restaurant with Sokkar. He had three slices of roast beef, three bowls of chicken soup, and three pieces of apple pie. Sokkar loves eating! He eats too much. He's always in the mood for ice cream, too.

Day: .....

Today I was busy. I bought groceries, did the laundry, and ironed all my clothes. Then, I baked bread and made dinner. Sokkar visited me and ate all the bread. He never has dinner by himself!

Day: .....

Today Sokkar and I visited the Food School. We took the underground. There was a baking class. Sokkar baked an apple pie. Sokkar sliced apples by himself. He hurt his finger. It wasn't serious.

Day: .....

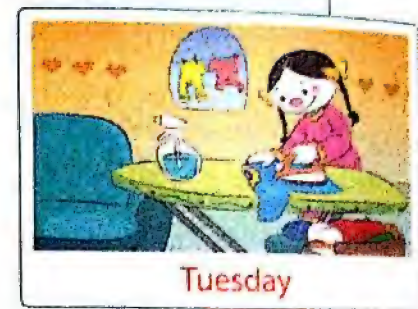
Sokkar and I walked to the park today. We took a nap near the lake. Sokkar got a sunburn. Then we fed the birds and Sokkar fell into the lake. Tomorrow I'm going to stay home by myself!



Friday



Monday



Tuesday



Thursday



# Review Sukha's Diary

Page 88

10

Write a diary entry about Sukha's day on the weekend.

Day

I went to a restaurant with Sukha. She had some food of fruit salad and a cup of coffee. She didn't eat enough. She's too thin. I thought she was going to get too thin and make dinner with her.

Day: **Thursday**

I ate too much at Sukha's house on Tuesday night. I had a stomach ache this morning. I had a bowl of ice cream so much. It was delicious. Ice cream is the best medicine.

Day

There was a baking class at the Food School today. I made an apple pie. I had an accident. I hurt my finger. But my pie was delicious. Sukha liked it. I'm happy.

Day: **Saturday**

It was 40 degrees today. I went to Sukha's house. She wanted to stay home by herself. I went to the park by myself. It wasn't fun. Then Sukha came to the park because she was bored at home. We had a good time.



Thursday



Friday

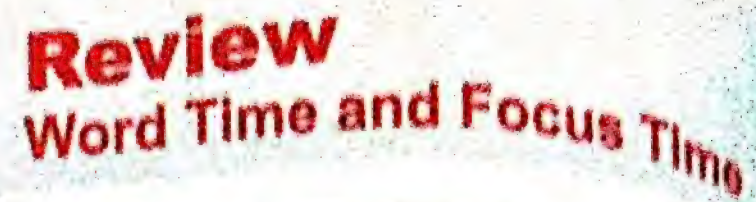


Wednesday



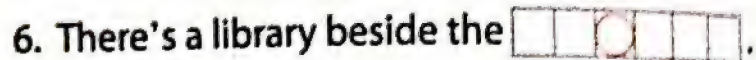
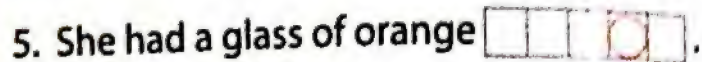
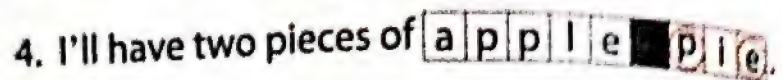
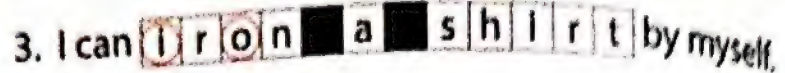
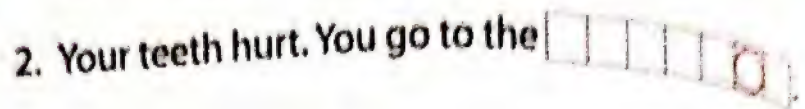
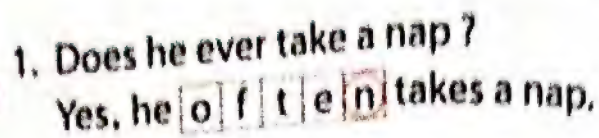
Saturday





50 pages

... وكتب الكلمات السابقة .



اكتب الحروف التي عليها دائرة في تمرين (A) واعد ترتيب الكلمات. اكتب الطعام الذي ستأكله منى في الغداء.





قسم بلاكبيرن تم تسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ٤١١ جلد،  
قسم براجوكة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.

1. I usually ~~sometimes~~ a sunburn when I go to Alexandria.

7. We usually \_\_\_\_\_ to music.  
a. listens      b. listen  
c. listening      d. to listen
8. What's your phone \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
- 758342.  
a. address      b. number  
c. book      d. house

### 1. you - Can - a message - take ?

2. sorry, - I'm - I - know - don't.

## 1. Is this All s pen?

2. We don't go to school on Friday



## Mini-Test on

## Unit 5

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

فهم بتقديم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد .  
فهم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة .



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She ..... bread three times a week.  
a. plays    b. reads    c. bakes    d. feeds
2. How often ..... your sister feed the birds ?  
a. do    b. does    c. is    d. has
3. .... does he visit a museum ?  
a. How much    b. How often  
c. How many    d. How long
4. He ..... the zoo once a month.  
a. to visit    b. visits    c. visiting    d. visit
5. She meets her friends ..... a week.  
a. two    b. once    c. one    d. times
6. He's studying hard for the maths .....  
a. school    b. test    c. art    d. paper
7. Be ..... with those who bother you.  
a. angry    b. noisy    c. patient    d. happy

8. She didn't read the ..... at school.  
a. books    b. newspaper  
c. museum    d. sunburn

### 2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. is - How - your - family ?

2. always - the - takes - He - underground.

### 3 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"Meeting a friend"

عظم حظه في طلبة الكل



# Listening Texts

## نصوص استماع كتاب الشرح

### UNIT (1)

#### • Listen and complete.

Page 32

**Hala** : Is it the Egyptian Museum ?

**Receptionist** : Yes, it is.

**Hala** : When are you open ?

**Receptionist** : We are open daily.

**Hala** : Thank you for your help.

**Receptionist** : You are welcome.

#### General Exercises on Conversation Time

#### • Listen and complete.

Page 33

**Mona** : Where are you going ?

**Ali** : I am going to the Egyptian Museum.

**Mona** : How much does it cost to get in ?

**Ali** : It's two pounds for Egyptians.

**Mona** : Does that include the Mummy rooms ?

**Ali** : No, it doesn't.

### Test (1) on Unit (1)

#### 1 Listen and circle.

Page 68

1. Where do you go on Friday ?

- I go to the Egyptian Museum.

2. How much is the ticket ?

- Ninety pounds.

3. Who invented the first ice cream churn ?

- Nancy Johnson.

4. Where did the first ice cream factory open ?

- It opened in Baltimore.

#### 2 Listen and complete.

**Adel** : Is there a theatre near your house ?

**Ali** : No, there isn't. There is a museum.

**Adel** : What are its hours ?

**Ali** : It's open from 9:00 to 7:00.

**Adel** : How much does it cost to get in ?

**Ali** : It's five pounds.

### Test (2) on Unit (1)

#### 1 Listen and circle.

Page 71

1. What are your hours ?

- We're open from 10:00 to 8:00.

2. Where was he ?

- At the library.

3. Are you open on Fridays ?

- Yes, we are open daily.

4. What flavours are America's favourite ?

- Vanilla and chocolate.

#### 2 Listen and complete.

**Ahmed** : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum.  
How can I help you ?

**Sherif** : Hi! What are your hours ?

**Ahmed** : We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.

**Sherif** : Are you open on Fridays ?

**Ahmed** : Yes, we're open daily.

**Sherif** : Thank you for your help.

### UNIT (2)

#### • Listen and complete.

Page 80

**Walter** : Hello! Are you ready to order ?

**Mona** : I think so. I'll have a steak and a baked potato.

**Walter** : Rare, medium or well done ?

**Mona** : Medium, please.

**Walter** : How about a salad ?

**Mona** : Sounds good.



General Exercises on Conversation Time

• Listen and circle.

Page 81

1. How about a salad ?  
- Sounds good.
2. What will you have ?  
- Spaghetti and meatballs.
3. What's today's special ?  
- Meat and rice.
4. What will the man have ?  
- He will have pizza.

General Exercises on Reading & Your Time

• Listen and complete.

Page 105

- Ahmed** : Where did you have lunch yesterday ?  
**Hany** : I had lunch at a new Italian restaurant.  
**Ahmed** : Where is it ?  
**Hany** : It's in Cairo.  
**Ahmed** : What does it serve ?  
**Hany** : It serves lunch and dinner.

Test (3) on Unit (2)

① Listen and circle.

Page 116

1. What will you have ?  
- Steak and salad.
2. How many bottles of water did you have ?  
- Two bottles.
3. Do you like meat ?  
- Yes, I do.
4. How much lemonade did they have ?  
- They had four cans of lemonade.

② Listen and complete.

- Ali** : Hello. Are you ready to order ?  
**Ahmed** : I think so.  
**Ali** : How about meatballs ?  
**Ahmed** : Sounds good. What's today's special ?  
**Ali** : Chicken and spaghetti.  
**Ahmed** : Good! I'm in the mood for spaghetti.

Test (4) on Unit (2)

Page 119

① Listen and circle.

1. How much bread did he have ?  
- He had six loaves of bread.
2. Are you ready to order ?  
- I think so. I'll have a steak.
3. How many glasses of orange juice do you have ?  
- Four glasses of orange juice.
4. What's today's special ?  
- Spaghetti and meatballs.

② Listen and complete.

- Waiter** : May I take your order now ?  
**Ayman** : I'd like an apple pie, please.  
**Waiter** : Would you like something to drink ?  
**Ayman** : Some tea, please.  
**Waiter** : How do you like your tea ?  
**Ayman** : Without sugar.

UNIT (3)

General Exercises on Conversation Time

① Listen and circle.

Page 130

1. What kinds of pies do you have ?  
- We have lemon, peach and apple.
2. How much are these ?  
- They are five pounds each.
3. Do you have any cherry pies ?  
- No, we're out of cherry pies.
4. What kinds of pies do you have ?  
- We have cherry, apple and orange.

② Listen and complete.

- Ahmed** : Good morning.  
 What kinds of pies do you have ?  
**Basem** : We have lemon, peach and apple pies.  
**Ahmed** : How much are the apple pies ?  
**Basem** : They're five pounds each.  
**Ahmed** : Okay. May I get one ?



Great! I'll get you one apple pie.

**Test (5) on Unit (3)**

Page 164

**1 Listen and circle.**

1. What do you want ?  
- A lemon pie.
2. What kinds of pies do you have ?  
- We have lemon, peach and apple.
3. How much are the apple pies ?  
- They are five pounds each.
4. Can you ride a bike by yourself ?  
- Yes, I can.

**2 Listen and complete.**

**Baker** : Good morning. Can I help you ?

**Nada** : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today ?

**Baker** : We have lemon, cherry and apple pies .

**Nada** : How much is the lemon pie ?

**Baker** : It's five pounds.

**Nada** : Okay, I will take one.

**Test (6) on Unit (3)**

Page 167

**1 Listen and circle.**

1. How much are the pies ?  
- They are ten pounds each.
2. How many pies have they got ?  
- They have got five pies.
3. Do you have any cherry pies ?  
- Yes, I do.
4. What do you have for lunch ?  
- We have fish and salad.

**2 Listen and complete.**

**Rokaya** : Good morning. Do you have any cherry pies ?

**Nada** : Sorry. We're out of cherry. But the apple pies are very nice.

**Rokaya** : How much are they ?

**Nada** : They're ten pounds each.

**Rokaya** : Oh, that's too expensive.

How much are the peach pies ?

**Nada** : They're five pounds each.

**UNIT (4)**

Page 180

**1 Listen and circle.**

1. Where is he ?  
- He is at the cinema.
2. Who's calling ?  
- This is Salwa Kameel.
3. What time will he be back ?  
- He will be back at ten.
4. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?  
- He isn't in right now.

**General Exercises on Conversation Time**

**1 Listen and complete.**

Page 181

**Asmaa** : Good morning.

**Amany** : Good morning.

**Asmaa** : May I speak to Nada , please ?

**Amany** : She is not in right now.

**Asmaa** : What time will she be back ?

**Amany** : I'm sorry. I don't know.

**Test (7) on Unit (4)**

**1 Listen and circle.**

Page 214

1. Do you ever listen to music ?  
- Yes, I usually listen to music.
2. What time will she be back ?  
- I'm sorry. I don't know.
3. Does he wear a wig ?  
- No, he never wears a wig.
4. What time will he be back ?  
- He will be back at eight.

**2 Listen and complete.**

**Maha** : Hello ! May I speak to Nada, please ?

**Rania** : Hello! She isn't in right now.

**Maha** : What time will she be back ?

**Rania** : I'm sorry. I don't know.

**Maha** : Please, tell her that I will come back tomorrow.

**Rania** : Okay. I will tell her.



Test (8) on Unit (4)

Page 217

1 Listen and circle.

1. What did she watch in a film studio ?  
- She watched the actors rehearse a scene.
2. Can I help you ?  
- Yes, please.
3. Do you ever have an accident ?  
- No, I don't.
4. May I speak to Ahmed, please ?  
- He isn't in right now.

2 Listen and complete.

- Nany** : Did you visit Alexandria ?  
**Samir** : Yes, I did.  
**Nany** : Who did you go with ?  
**Samir** : I went with my family.  
**Nany** : What did you visit there ?  
**Samir** : I visited Alexandria Library.

UNIT (5)

General Exercises on Conversation Time

• Listen and circle.

Page 228

1. What's the weather like ?  
- It's cold.
2. Is it hot today ?  
- Yes, it is.
3. Do you think it's going to rain ?  
- Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
4. How is your family ?  
- They're fine.

• Listen and complete.

- Asmaa** : Good morning, Amira.  
**Amira** : Good morning, Asmaa.  
**Asmaa** : How is your sister now ?  
**Amira** : She is better.  
**Asmaa** : Do you think that she had the flu ?  
**Amira** : You are right.

Test (9) on Unit (5)

Page 219

1 Listen and circle.

1. How often does she take medicine ?  
- She takes medicine twice a week.
2. Do you think it's going to rain ?  
- Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
3. How is your sister ?  
- She's ill.
4. How often do you feed the birds ?  
- Four times a day.

2 Listen and complete.

- Kamal** : Hi, Mr Samy.  
**Mr Samy** : Hello, Kamal. Have a seat.  
 How's your family ?  
**Kamal** : They're fine. But my sister has the flu.  
**Mr Samy** : I'm sorry to hear that. Is it serious ?  
**Kamal** : No, it isn't. She is doing better today.  
**Mr Samy** : Good!

Test (10) on Unit (5)

1 Listen and circle.

Page 262

1. How is your father ?  
- He's fine, thank you.
2. Who does Noha bother ?  
- Noha bothers her sister.
3. How's your family, Kamal ?  
- They are fine, thanks.
4. How often do you take a nap ?  
- I take a nap once a day.

2 Listen and complete.

- Ahmed** : Oh! It's cold today.  
**Samy** : That's right. It's 23 degrees!  
**Ahmed** : Wow! Do you think it's going to rain ?  
**Samy** : Look! It's starting to rain.  
**Ahmed** : How can I go back home ?  
**Samy** : You can take a taxi.



# Answers of Main Book's Paragraphs & Emails

إجابات الموضوعات ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني في كتاب الشرح

## Unit (1)

### General Exercises on Conversation Time

Page 34

#### "The Egyptian Museum"

Last week, I visited the Egyptian Museum. It's in Cairo. It's a nice place. It is open daily. It is open from 9:00 to 7:00. The ticket costs two pounds. Children under five are free.

### General Exercises on Word Time

Page 41

#### "My school"

I go to school early in the morning. My school is near my house. I always walk to school. I go to school with my friends. I like my teachers. My favourite subject is English. My school is clean.

### General Exercises on Focus & Practice Time

Page 49

To :	ali@gmail.com
From :	amr@gmail.com
Subject :	My school library

Dear Ali,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you. I want to tell you about my school library. It is big. It is beside my class. It has a lot of books. Tell me about your library.

Yours,

Amr

### General Exercises on Reading & Your Time

Page 58

To : mona@yahoo.com  
From : fatma@yahoo.com  
Subject : The ice cream history

Dear Mona,

How is your family ? I'm very happy to send you this email. The ice cream has a long history. Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream churn. Ice cream is one of America's favourite desserts. You can buy ice cream at every grocery store. American's favourite flavours are vanilla and chocolate.

Yours,

Fatma

### Test (1) on Unit (1)

Page 70

To : mohamed@yahoo.com  
From : mazen@yahoo.com  
Subject : The dessert I ate

Dear Mohamed,

How are you ? I like ice cream. It's my favourite dessert. My favourite flavour is chocolate. It's delicious. There's an ice cream shop near my house. I eat ice cream every Friday.

Yours,

Mazen

### Test (2) on Unit (1)

Page 73

#### "My visit to the Egyptian Museum"

Yesterday, I visited the Egyptian Museum. I went with my family. We saw



the Mummy rooms. The museum is near my house. I liked it a lot. It's a nice place. It's open daily.

### Unit (2)

#### General Exercises on Conversation Time

Page 83

#### "In the restaurant"

Next week, I'll go to the restaurant. I'll go with my family. We'll have lunch there. I think I'll have a steak. I like medium steak. My father will have spaghetti and meatballs. The prices are good.

#### General Exercises on Word Time

Page 89

#### "My favourite food"

There are many kinds of foods. My favourite food is chicken. I like to have chicken soup. I like to eat roast chicken, too. Mum cooks chicken for lunch. It's delicious. I'm going to have chicken today.

#### General Exercises on Reading & Your Time

Page 106

**To:** nadia@gmail.com  
**From:** salma@gmail.com  
**Subject:** A new Italian restaurant

Dear Nadia,

How are you? I write this email to tell you about a new Italian restaurant in Cairo. It opened on May 5<sup>th</sup>. It serves lunch and dinner. It is open daily. It's clean and big. The prices are good.

Yours,  
Salma

### Test (3) on Unit (2)

Page 118

**To:** adham@yahoo.com  
**From:** adel@gmail.com  
**Subject:** My daily breakfast

Dear Adham,

How are you? It's nice to write this email to you. I'll tell you about my daily breakfast. I get up at seven o'clock every day. I have my breakfast with my family. We have beans, eggs and some cheese. We have some tea, too.

Yours,  
Adel

### Test (4) on Unit (2)

Page 121

#### "An Italian restaurant"

I like to eat in Italian restaurants. I like spaghetti and meatballs. The food is delicious. I always go there with my brother. My brother likes to eat pizza. Children under five are free. The prices are good.

### Unit (3)

#### General Exercises on Conversation Time

Page 131

#### "At the bakery"

There is a bakery in my street. It's next to my house. There are many kinds of pies there. There are apple, peach, lemon and cherry pies. I like cherry pies. They are ten pounds each. The prices are good.

#### General Exercises on Focus Time & Practice Time :

Page 147

#### "My holiday"

I like holidays. My holiday is on Friday. I stay home with my family. I like to help my



family. I do the laundry by myself. My dad buys the groceries by himself. We watch TV at night.

**Test (5) on Unit (3)**

Page 166

To :	nada@yahoo.com
From :	ahmed@gmail.com
Subject :	My favourite pie

Dear Nada,

How are you doing ? I'll tell you about my favourite pie. I like all pies. But my favourite is apple pie. It's delicious. It's not expensive. The baker gets a fresh pie for me.

Yours,

Ahmed

**Test (6) on Unit (3)**

Page 169

**"Supermarkets"**

Supermarkets are nice places. There is a big supermarket near my house. It's open daily. I like going there. Dad and I go to buy groceries from the supermarket. I put groceries in a trolley. The prices are good.

**Unit (4)****General Exercises on Conversation Time**

Page 182

**"Phone call"**

Yesterday, I called my friend Ali. But he wasn't there. His dad told me that he went to the park. I asked him to take a message. I told him my name and number. He'll give Ali my message. I'll see Ali at 1:00.

**General Exercises on Word Time****"Film studio"**

Page 188

I'm going to visit a film studio. I'm going to visit it next week. I like watching the actors. They put on make-up and wear wigs. They drive sports cars. They are nice people. They sign autographs for me.

**Test (7) on Unit (4)**

Page 216

To :	noura@yahoo.com
From :	aya@yahoo.com
Subject :	My visit to Alexandria

Dear Noura,

How is your family? I want to tell you about my visit to Alexandria. Last Friday, we went to Alexandria by train. We stayed at a hotel. The hotel was near the beach. We went to the beach at 2 p.m. We had a nice time in Alexandria.

Yours,

Aya

**Test (8) on Unit (4)**

Page 219

**"Visiting a film studio"**

I went to a film studio. They make all kinds of films at that studio. Today, they were making an adventure film. I watched the actors rehearse. They put on make-up. I talked to a film star. He was really nice.

**Unit (5)****General Exercises on Conversation Time**

Page 229

To :	ali@yahoo.com
From :	hany@yahoo.com
Subject :	My sister is ill



Dear Ali,

How are you ? I write this email to tell you about my sister. She is ill. She has the flu. She is in the hospital. I visit her every day. She's doing better today.

Yours,

Hany

### General Exercises on Word Time

Page 235

#### "Daily activities"

I do many activities every day. I always get up early. I take the underground to my school. I meet my friends at school. We take a maths test twice a week. We read stories. I go home at 2:00 and feed my birds.

### General Exercises on Focus Time & Practice Time

Page 242

#### "My school day"

I go to school five times a week. I always walk to school. I never take the underground to school. I take a maths test once a week. I like English and maths. I like to meet my friend at the break. I go back home at 3 p.m.

### General Exercises on Reading & Your Time

Page 249

To :	asmaahmed@hotmail.com
From :	sararamy@gmail.com
Subject :	My little sister Magy

Dear Asmaa,

How is your family ? I have a big problem. My little sister Magy is a pest. She follows me all the time. She bothers my friends, too. She takes my things without

asking. Mum tells me to be patient, but I can't. What can I do ?

Your friend,

Sara Ramy

### Test (9) on Unit (5)

Page 261

#### "At the park"

There is a park near my house. There are a lot of trees. I always go to the park with my friends. We play football. On Fridays I go with my family to the park. We have lunch there. We have a nice time.

### Test (10) on Unit (5)

Page 264

To : ahmed@yahoo.com  
From : hatem@yahoo.com  
Subject : My family

Dear Ahmed,

How are you doing ? I want to tell you about my family. My father is a doctor. He works in a big hospital near the train station. My mother is a teacher. She works in a school near our house. I have a little sister.

Yours,

Hatem

### Mini Test on Unit (5)

Page 276

#### "Meeting a friend"

Ali is my friend. I meet him every Friday. We meet at the park. The park is near my house. We talk a lot. We always play football in the park. I love my friend Ali very much.



# El-Moasser student's Follow-up

المتابعة لطلاب المرحلة الابتدائية

1. Student Follow-up

المتابعة لطلاب

2. Search, reply and create

البحث عن الطلاب، الرد على أسئلتهم، إنشاء

3. List of students

قائمة الطلاب الذين تم متابعتهم في المرحلة الابتدائية





# 1. Dictation

أكتب في المرات (تعال) (تعال) (تعال) (تعال) (تعال) (تعال) (تعال) (تعال) (تعال) (تعال)

## Unit 1

### Dictation Conversation Time

daily			أشياء كثيرة
foreigner			أجنبي
free			أوقات فراغ

### Dictation Word Time

school			مدرسة
barber's shop			محل الحلاقة
pavement			طريق

### Dictation Reading Time & Your Time

history			تاريخ
churn			مخلو
cone			مخروط

## Unit 2

### Dictation Conversation Time

order			أمر
rare			نادر
well done			أشبع

### Dictation Word Time

water			ماء
lemonade			ليموناد
roast beef			لحم مشوي



## Dictation Reading Time & Your Time

Italian restaurant  
what time  
open

.....  
.....  
.....

مطعم إيطالي  
متى / متى  
يفتح

## Unit 3

## Dictation Conversation Time

What kind of  
activities  
cherry

.....  
.....  
.....

ما نوع  
أنشطة  
فراولة

## Dictation Word Time

walk to school  
do the laundry  
iron a shirt

.....  
.....  
.....

مشي إلى المدرسة  
فعل الغسيل  
الحديد قميص

## Dictation Reading Time & Your Time

list  
money  
problem

.....  
.....  
.....

القائمة  
مشكلة المال  
مشكلة المال

## Unit 4

## Dictation Conversation Time

right now  
be back  
message

.....  
.....  
.....

الآن  
يكون  
رسالة



**Dictation** الإلقاء **Word Time**

wear a wig  
get a sunburn  
take a nap

ارتدِ شعيرة  
تأخذ حماماً  
تأخذ قيلولة

**Dictation** الإلقاء **Reading Time & Your Time**

citadel  
adventure film  
really

يتدرب على أداء تمثيل  
نجم سينمائي  
مهما

**Unit 5**

**Dictation** الإلقاء **Conversation Time**

degree  
cloudy  
serious

رما  
تقلو نرا  
الطقس

**Dictation** الإلقاء **Word Time**

feed the birds  
read a newspaper  
take medicine

يلتقي بصديق  
يزور متحفاً  
يستقل / يركب المترو

**Dictation** الإلقاء **Reading Time & Your Time**

little  
pest  
patient

أكبر سناً  
عادل / مُنصف  
إنتباه





# Search, apply and create

ابحث، طبق وابدع (ورقة بحثية على كل وحدة)

Unit

1

Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري



Project

المشروع

Make a signboard about the museum's hours, the entrance fees and its exhibits.

قم بعمل لافتة توضح عدد ساعات العمل الخاصة بالمتحف وكذلك تذكر الدخول والمعروضات الموجودة بالمتحف.



Project resources

مصادر المشروع

\* <https://www.ekb.eg>

- بنك المعرفة المصري

\* The internet

- الإنترنت

\* Student's books of different subjects

- الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة



Your Signboard

اللافتة الخاصة بك



Unit

2

Foods and drinks

الأطعمة والمشروبات



Project

المشروع

Make a poster about the foods and drinks you like and the foods and drinks you don't like.

قم بعمل ملصق (بوستر) عن الأطعمة والمشروبات التي تحبها والأطعمة والمشروبات التي لا تحبها.



Project resources

مصادر المشروع

\* <https://www.ekb.eg>

- بنك المعرفة المصري

\* The internet

- الإنترنت

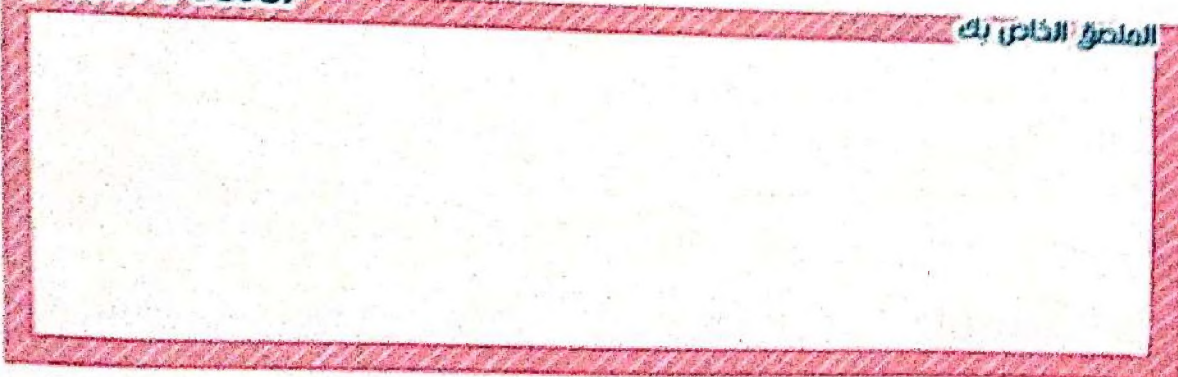
\* Student's books of different subjects

- الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة



Your Poster

الملصق الخاص بك





### Unit 3 The supermarket

#### ★ Project المشروع

Make a card about your visit to the supermarket.

قم بعمل بطاقة عن زيارتك للسوبر ماركت

#### السوبر ماركت

#### ★ Project resources مصادر المشروع

• <https://www.ekb.eg>

• The internet

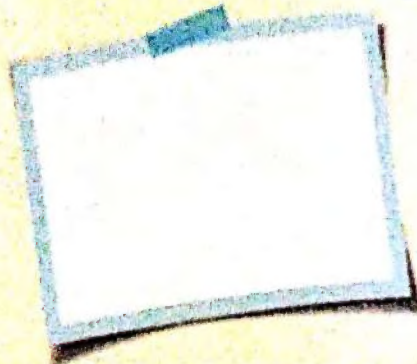
• Student's books of different subjects

- بنك المعرفة المصري

- الإنترنت

- الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

#### ★ Your Card



البطاقة الخاصة بك

### Unit 4 A visit to Alexandria

#### زيارة إلى الإسكندرية

#### ★ Project المشروع

Make an invitation to your friend to visit Alexandria.

قم بعمل دعوة لصديقك لزيارة الإسكندرية.

#### ★ Project resources مصادر المشروع

• <https://www.ekb.eg>

• The internet

• Student's books of different subjects

- بنك المعرفة المصري

- الإنترنت

- الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

#### ★ Your Invitation

الدعوة الخاصة بك